

1—finish the following dialogue

1.Amr and Hady are talking about where to spend their holiday.

Amr : Do you have any plans for the weekend?
 Hady : 1).....
 Amr : I have a good idea. 2..... ?
 Hady : 2)..... ?
 Amr : We can enjoy the beautiful scenery of the White Desert.
 Hady : How will we go there?
 Amr : 3).....
 Hady : Where can we meet?
 Amr : 4).....
 Hady : Ok. I will meet you at the bus station.

2.Ahmed and Osman are talking about animal habitats.

Ahmed : Where were you yesterday?
 Osman : (1).....
 Ahmed : Gebel Elba !(2).....?
 Osman : It's near the Red Sea.
 Ahmed : (3).....?
 Osman : You can see many animals and birds there.
 Ahmed : (4).....
 Osman : You can come with me the next time.
 Ahmed When will you go?
 Osman : (5).....

3.Adham is talking to a tourist at a hotel.

Adham : Are you visiting Egypt on business or on holiday?
 Tourist : 1).....
 Adham : 2)..... ?
 Tourist : I come from London.
 Adham : 3)..... ?
 Tourist : Big Ben and the Queen's Palace are the most famous places London.
 Adham : What interests you most in Egypt?
 Tourist : 4).....
 Adham : I hope you will enjoy your tour in our country.
 Tourist : 5).....

4.Eman hasn't seen her friend Nada for a long time.

Eman : Hi, Nada! How is it going?
 Nada : 1)
 Eman : I haven't seen you for a long time. Where have you been?
 Nada : 2)
 Eman : Wadi Al-Hitan! 3) ?
 Nada : To see the fossils of the whales there.

Eman : 4) ?
Nada : I stayed there for two days.
Eman : Is it a nice place?
Nada : 5)

5.Samah is reading a review about modern wonders

Rehab : What are you doing?
Samah : (1).....
Rehab : What is the article about?
Samah : (2).....
Rehab : (3).....?
Samah : Yes, Taj Mahal is in the list of modern wonders.
Rehab : (4).....?
Samah : It was built by Shah Jahan for his wife.
Rehab : Do you know that the Great Wall of China was built with rice?
Samah : (5).....

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

pollution - attractive - than - as - community - pollute

Countryside life differs from city life. The countryside is smaller ❶ the city. It is a small ❷ with fresh air and ❸ nature. While the city is more populated, noisier, and abound by factories which cause a lot of ❹ I think the countryside is better than the city.

found - live- fur - catch - are found - teeth

I have read a book about caracals. They're amazing animals. They have a lot of (1)..... on their feet, which makes it difficult for other animals to hear them when they are trying to (2)..... ..them. Caracals (3)..... .. in many places in Africa and the Middle East. Caracals can (4).....for up to 12 years in the wild.

attractive - country - public - describe - population - described

Luxor is a city in Upper Egypt. The 1) of Luxor is 422,407 people. Luxor has been 2)..... as the "World's greatest open-air museum". There are a lot of 3) places that tourists can visit such us the temple of Karnack, the Valleys of the Kings und Valley of the Queens. It has a great system of (4) transport. You can get anywhere easily.

tourists - monument - moved - were moved - died - born

The Taj Mahal is a beautiful 1)..... that is found in India. Jahan, the fifth emperor, built the Taj Mahal to be a tomb for his second wife. She (2) in 1630 after giving rth to their 14 th child. When her remains 3)..... to the Taj Mahal, she

became known as Mumtaz Mahal. The Taj Mahal is now visited by thousands of (4) every year.

cover- rain - are covered - ocean - habitats - desert

A habitat is the natural environment where an animal or a plant lives. There are different habitats. These (1)..... are polar, coastal, wetlands, rainforests, grasslands and deserts. Polar habitats (2)..... by ice. Rainforests are usually very hot and have a lot of (3)..... Coastal habitats are next to the sea or the (4)..... There is always a lot of water in a wetland.

is - since - decorated - was - top - famous

The Leaning Tower of Pisa, in Italy, is very (1)..... It looks like it might fall over. It (2)..... 187 feet high and has 8 floors. Over 293 steps lead to 7 bells at the (3)..... of it. The outside is (4) with beautiful paintings. This tower is one of the most important buildings in Italy and an important tourist attraction.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A.....land is the land that is next to the sea or the ocean.
a polar b. coastal c. forest d. desert
2. Deserts are huge areas with a lot of sand. "Huge" is similar in meaning to.....
a. small b. tiny c. little d. enormous
3. The ground was wet because of the rain. "Wet" is an antonym of.....
a. dry b. rainy c. snowy d. stormy
4. The word "coast" can be changed into an adjective by adding the suffix
a-ance b-ful c-al d-less
5. A/An.....is a large, white animal which lives on the ice of the Arctic.
a. caracal b. polar bear c. frog d. orangutan
6. A/An.....is a large animal with long red hair and long arms, which lives in the trees of Indonesia.
a. lion b. turtle c. orangutan d. frog
6. Ahmed Mekky is a famous actor. "Famous" is similar in meaning to.....
a. unknown b. strange c. well-known d. usual
7. We should do our best to protect the environment. "Protect" gives the same meaning as.....
a. harm b. look after c. destroy d. ruin
8. Unusually for me, I fell asleep very quickly yesterday. The prefix "un-" gives The.....meaning of "usual".
a. same b. similar c. opposite d. meaning
9. The rock looks like an eye. This means it is in the.....of an eye.
a. share b. shape c. shade d. shake
10. We can turn the verb "visit" into a noun by adding the suffix ____
a -less b. -al c -able d. -or
11. We can change the verb "appear" into a noun by adding the suffix _____

a -ance

b-ous

c -ment

d -ive

12. I think that the internet is a wonder of modern technology. The prefix "tech-" similar in meaning to _____

a. skill

b. nature

c. time

d. top

13. We add the prefix.....to give the opposite of "usually".

a. dis-

b. un-

c. im-

d. in-

14. The word "build" is the antonym of

(a) create

(b) make

(c) destroy

(d) fix

15. The word "huge" gives the same meaning as

(a) little

(b) tiny

(c) giant

(d) small

16. This is an exciting match. The word "exciting" can be replaced by

(a) boring

(b) interesting

(c) ugly

(d) bored

17. The suffix turns the word "nation" to an adjective.

(a) -y

(b) -al

(c) -ing

(d) -ful

18. To give the noun of the verb "appear", we add the suffix

(a) -ment

(b) -ed

(c) -ance

(d) -ion

19. The noun "coast" can be an adjective by adding

(a) -y

(b) -al

(c) -ing

(d) -ful

20. To give the noun of the verb "pollute", we add the suffix

(a) -ment

(b) -ed

(c) -ance

(d) -ion

21. To give the antonym of the word "natural", we add the prefix

(a) un-

(b) dis-

(c) ir-

(d) il-

22. We can get the adjective of the noun "west" by adding the suffix

(a) -ern

(b) -ed

(c) -ing

(d) -er

23. A/ An is a wild cat with long legs and big ears that lives in Africa and Asia.

(a) turtle

(b) caracal

(c) orangutan

(d) bear

24. A/ An is a large natural area of land which is mostly grass.

(a) lake

(b) mountain

(c) pole

(d) grassland

25. A/ An is a large, white bear which lives on the ice of the Arctic.

(a) tiger

(b) polar bear

(c) dog

(d) orangutan

26. To means to make something full, so there is no space for any more of something.

(a) fall

(b) wonder

(c) feel

(d) fill

27. This river is polluted. This means that it is

(a) clean

(b) clear

(c) not dirty

(d) dirty

28. "....." means everywhere around you.

(a) Surrounded

(b) wonder

(c) Lay

(d) Destroy

29. A/ An is an area of land that is often flooded by water.

(a) wonderland

(b) pole

(c) wetland

(d) skyscraper

30. A/ An is an area in the desert where you can find water.

(a) village

(b) hill

(c) mountain

(d) oasis

31. The word "horrible" and the word "terrible" are

(a) suffixes

(b) antonyms

(c) synonyms

(d) not similar

32. The words "wet" and "dry" are

(a) prefixes

(b) antonyms

(c) synonyms

(d) similar

33. My brother broke his toy. He is not happy. We can replace "not happy" by

(a) bad

(b) sad

(c) unhappy

(d) both a & b

34. The suffix turns the verb "create" to a noun.

(a) -ment

(b) -ance

(c) -ion

(d) -ful

35. To give the noun of the verb "visit", we add the suffix

- (a) -ment (b) -er (c) -ed (d) -or
36. The noun "wind" can be an adjective by adding
- (a) - y (b) - al (c) - ing (d) - ful
37. To give the antonym of the word "understand", we add the prefix
- (a) un- (b) dis- (c) ir- (d) mis-
38. To give the antonym of the word "lucky", we add the prefix
- (a) un- (b) dis- (c) ir- (d) il-
39. We can get the noun of the verb "build" by adding the suffix
- (a) -en (b) -ed (c) -or (d) -er
40. A/ An is the place where a farmer keeps his horses.
- (a) cave (b) board (c) stable (d) class
41. A/ An is a land that is below the area around it.
- (a) lake (b) mountain (c) depression (d) grassland
42. are the remains of animals or plants that lived in the past.
- (a) Preservatives (b) Stables (c) Fossils (d) Species
43. To means to keep something safe from being damaged.
- (a) design (b) wonder (c) treat (d) preserve
44. My grandmother treated all her children the same. She was always
- (a) unkind (b) unfriendly (c) kind (d) cruel
45. This oasis is very far from the city. This means that it is
- (a) near (b) clear (c) remote (d) identical
46. " " means how long something is.
- (a) Width (b) Weight (c) Length (d) Size
47. The person who does research is called a
- (a) researching (b) researcher (c) researched (d) research
48. It was raining heavily yesterday, so the streets are very
- (a) clean (b) dry (c) wet (d) lucky
50. The word "suitable" and the word "proper" are
- (a) suffixes (b) antonyms (c) synonyms (d) not similar
51. The words "loss" and "gain" are
- (a) prefixes (b) antonyms (c) synonyms (d) similar
52. The suffix turns the verb "endanger" to an adjective.
- (a) - ion (b) - s (c) - ed (d) - ful
53. To give the noun of the verb "build", we add the suffix
- (a) -ment (b) -ing (c) -ance (d) -or
54. The word "suit" can be an adjective by adding
- (a) - y (b) - al (c) - able (d) - ful
55. To give the antonym of the word "active", we add the prefix
- (a) un- (b) dis- (c) ir- (d) in-
56. To give the antonym of the word "able", we add the prefix
- (a) un- (b) mis- (c) ir- (d) il-
57. We can get the noun of the verb "introduce" by omitting the letter "e" and adding the suffix ...
- (a) -ment (b) -ion (c) -tion (d) -ence
58. A/ An is a small, green animal with long back legs that lives in or near water.

- (a) caracal

(b) mongoose

(c) crocodile

(d) frog
59. A/ An a small animal with a long body and tail, which lives in Africa and Asia. It can kill snakes by biting them.
- (a) caracal

(b) mongoose

(c) crocodile

(d) frog
60. To be means to be unable to understand something clearly.
- (a) confident

(b) active

(c) understanding

(d) confused

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. These areas(know) as polar habitats. **SB**
2. These habitats(find) at the top and the bottom of Earth. **SB**
3. What kind of habitat is the area around the Nile Delta.....(call) ? **SB**
4. Fewer magazines.....(sell) today by newsagents because of the internet. **WB**
- 5.This national park.....(surround) by grasslands. **SB**
6. Hundreds of date palm trees..... (is) grown here. **WB**
- 7.Our beaches are visited.....(with) thousands of tourists every year. **WB**
- 8.Why isn't Gebel Elba.....(visiting) by more tourists ? **SB**
9. A report about animals and plants that are in danger was.....(publish) **SB**
10. Better news.....(shared) by another report yesterday. **SB**
11. These pictures were.....(painting) by her daughters. **WB**
12. The first Pantheon in Rome.....(built) in around 27 BCE. **WB**
13. We don't know how the stones for the Pyramids.....(carried) to Giza. **WB**
14. Long ago, camels.....(call) ships of the desert by some people, **SB**
15. We don't know when Petra.....(did) named one of the new seven wonders of the world. **SB**
16. Because of last week's floods in India, a lot of houses.....(destroyed). **SB**
17. In the last 100 years, we.....(lose) more than 800 species. **SB**
18. The Cairo Tower.....(designed) by Naoum Shebib in 1956. **WB**
19. Many new cars (making) by robots in factories.
20. Squash (not play) by many students.
21. Our beaches (visiting) by thousands of tourists each year.
22. Many houses (build) in coastal areas.
23. People (are cut down) a lot of our rainforests every year.
24. The dates (sell) in many shops in the area.
25. Baskets, shoes and furniture (made) from the date palm trees.
26. Wadi Al-Hitan (visit) by about 1000 people last year.
27. Whales with legs (find) by some researchers last year.
28. A list of the new Seven Wonders (make) in 2007.
29. The final
(watch) by
TV last
- match
millions of people on
night.
30. Candles (use) for light, because there was no electricity in the past.
31. Who (break) the glass of this window?
32. It is a nice photo. It (took) by my brother two days ago.

Unit 8

Protecting our planet

1. Finish the following dialogue:
- 1.Nadine meets her friend Amira after the English exam.

Nadine : Hello, Amira. How was your English exam ?
Amira : It was perfect. In fact, it was easy. (1).....?
Nadine : I didn't do well.
Amira :(2).....?
Nadine : Because the test was really easy, but(3)
Amira {4).....?
Nadine : I didn't get ready because my mum was sick.
Amira : And how's your mum now ?
Nadine :{5).....
Am Ira : Anyway, you can do well I In the next exam.

2.Adham is telling his father about his calculator that was lost at school.

Father : How are you, Adham ?
Adham : I'm fine.
Father : Adham, you look sad. What's the matter?
Adham : (1)
Father : (2) ?
Adham : It was hot, so I went to wash my face. When I came back, I didn't find it.
Father : (3) ?
Adham : Yes, I looked for it under the desk. What should I do, dad?
Father : (4) If you don't find it, I'll get you another one.
Adham : (5)

3.Ahmed and Ay man are talking about natural habitats.

Ahmed : Hello, Ayman. What are you doing ?
Ayman : Hi, Ahmed. (1).....
Ahmed : (2).....?
Ayman : The book is about animals in rainforests.
Ahmed :(3)?
Ayman : The orangutan is my favourite rainforest animal.
Ahmed : What is the problem that affects rainforests badly ?
Ayman :(4).....
Ahmed : What does deforestation mean ?
Ayman : (5).....

4.Hamza is talking to Mr. Ayman about renewable and non-renewable energy.

Hamza : Good morning, Mr. Ayman. Could you explain something for me?
Mr. Ayman: Good morning, Hamza. Of course, (1).....?
Hamza : (2).....?

Mr. Ayman: Renewable energy is a kind of energy that is easily replaced.
Hamza : Can you give me examples of renewable energy ?
Mr. Ayman: (3).....
Hamza : Is oil one of the examples of renewable energy ?
Mr. Ayman : (4).....
Hamza : Which is better for the environment renewable or non-renewable energy ?
Mr. Ayman : (5).....

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

confusing - famous - don't - didn't - confused - directions

When I visited Mansoura for the first time to join the university, I was (1)..... . I (2).....know how to get to the university. I asked someone for (3).....It was faraway, so I took a taxi. After that, I lived for four years happily in that (4)city.

ride - turn - save - will - would - pollution

People should be careful at their homes. They should (1)..... energy. They should (2).....off their devices and lamps after using them. Instead of taking a bus, they can (3).....bikes and this (4).....make them healthy, too.

driving - drive - air - pollution - dioxide - oxygen

The Earth is the planet on which we live. We should protect our planet from (1).....It has many kinds like (2)..... and water pollution. Air pollution is a result to the increase in carbon (3)....., so we should avoid (4).....old cars and drive modern ones which work with natural gas.

fabric - make - making - traditional - weaver - weaving

There are a lot of (1).....arts in Egypt. I learned about the traditional art of (2).....at school today. A (3).....uses a machine called a loom. This crosses threads under and over each other to (4)fabric.

charging - changing - fires - buyers - reasons - cutting

Our planet is getting hotter and our weather is (1)..... There are more floods, droughts and forest (2)..... than at any time in history. One of the (3).....for this is climate change. We must avoid (4).....down trees.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1..... is a problem in the Arctic and Antarctic because of global warming. It causes floods.
a. Air pollution b. Landfill c. Melting ice d. Deforestation

2.....is a place where people leave rubbish on the land.

- a. Landfill site b. Deforestation c. Climate change d. Air pollution

3.. To.....means to take in liquid or heat through a surface.

- a. melt b. keep c. absorb d. form

4..is a greenhouse gas that is made from landfill sites.

- a. Oxygen b. Methane c. Hydrogen d. Carbon dioxide

5. The recent storms have caused serious damage.. The word "serious" means.....

- a. good b. dangerous c. attractive d. natural

6. House prices are increasing. The word "increasing" means to become....in amount or size .

- a. smaller b. happier c. larger d. nicer

7. You should avoid foods which contain a lot of fat. The synonym of the word "avoid" is....

- a. keep b. stop c. pass d. recycle

8. To make the noun form of the verb "farm" we add the suffix.....

- a.-able b.-ing c.-al d.-ous

9. To give the opposite meaning of the word "renewable" we add the prefix.....

- a. dis- b. un- c. non- d. im-

10. I've passed my driving test!. The antonym of the word "passed" is....

- a. started b. finished c. fell d. failed

11. We can form the adjective of the word "renew" by adding the suffix.....

- a.-al b.-ous c.-able d.-ing

12. We add the prefix.....to mean to do something again.

- a. re- b. in- c. de- d. non-

13. The suffix.....forms the noun from the verb "pollute".

- a. - ment b. - ion c. - al d. - ed

14. Stop shouting - you're giving me a headache!. The antonym of "stop" is.....

- a. prevent b. quit c. avoid d. continue

15.means the practice of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm.

- a. Livestock b. Cattle c. Farming d. Deforestation

16. To get the adjective of "environment", we use the suffix.....

- a. -al b. -ity c. -able d. -y

17. We use the prefix.....to form the antonym of "renewable"

- a. un- b. non - c.ir- d. in

18. A plastic football field was used in the 2018 World Cup. The word "field" means.....

- a. competitor b. computer c. sports playground d. land

19. The light is connected to a timer.. The word "connected" meanstogether.

- a. transported b. joined c. related d. phoned

20. We can form the adjective of the word "connect" by adding the suffix.....

- a. - ment b. - ing c. - ed d. - al

21. If he does something wrong, he has to be punished. In this sentence, we can replace the word "wrong" with ".....".

- a. incorrect b. tradition c. right d. cycle

22. The antonym of the word "traditional" is.....

- a. ancient b. modern c. wrong d. classic

23. There is a broken glass on the floor. The synonym of the word "broken" is.....

- a. correct b. incorrect c. damaged d. amazing

24. We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective of the word "tradition".

- a. - y b. - al c. - ous d. - ed

25. Please, don't write below the page. The antonym of the word "below" is.....

- a. next b. less c. under d. above

26. The..... is a plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast.

- a. seawater b. sea view c. seagrass d. seashell

27. We can form the opposite of the word "attractive" by adding the prefix ".....".

- a. im- b. re- c. un- d. dis-

28. The suffix "....." changes the verb "attract" into an adjective.

- a. -able b. -ive c. -y d. -er

29. We add the suffix "....." to change the noun "danger" into an adjective.

- a. -able b. -ous c. -ful d. -ment

30. The word "protected" is the same as the word.....

- a. dangerous b. bored c. safe d. relaxed

31. The antonym of the word "begin" is ".....".

- a. start b. finish c. attract d. appear

32. To make the noun from the word "speak" we add the suffix.....

- a. -ist b. -er c. -ment d. -ness

33. The synonym of the word "suitable" is

- a. helpful b. respectable c. convenient d. content

34. The prefix "un-" in the word "unnaturally" gives the of the word "naturally".

- a. synonym b. antonym c. adverb d. adjective

35. This jewellery is very attractive. The synonym of the word "attractive" is....

- a. protected b. careful c. free d. beautiful

36. This form of energy is sustainable. We can use it again. This means it is.....

- a. vanish b. end c. nonrenewable d. renewable

37. Impossible and possible are.....

- a. equal b. synonyms c. antonyms d. same
38. Known is the synonym of.....
- a. disappear b. unfamiliar c. familiar d. unknown
39.is to become impossible to see any longer.
- a. Appear b. Known c. Disappear d. Save
40. Recycling is great for the environment. This means it is.....
- a. useless b. bad c. good d. terrible
41. We asked our teacher to start a project and he said yes. This means he.....
- a. refused b. disagreed c. agreed d. laughed
42.means a coloured liquid used for writing or printing.
- a. Gas b. Coal c. Ink d. Sheets
43. A.....is a small container that has ink inside.
- a. trunk b. bank c. carriage d. cartridge
44.means part of the traditions of a country or group of people.
- a. Habitat b. Traditional c. Solar d. Lunar
45.are people whose job is to weave cloth.
- a. Thieves b. Pilots c. Scientists d. Weavers
46.is the same as "take in" .
- a. Upload b. Download c. Absorb d. Disturb
47. The prefix "....." means use again.
- a. re b. ir c. il d. dis
48. The suffix"" gives the opposite of "useful".
- a. ness b. ship c. less d. il

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If we.....(burned) plastic rubbish, we will pollute the air.
2. What.....(happened) if we don't recycle rubbish ?
3. Our environment.....(being) cleaner if we recycle our rubbish.
4. What.....(would) you do if you don't understand the homework ?
5. How will Tarek feel if he.....(go) to bed very late tonight ?
6. Will Dina.....(speaking) good English if her parents move to Canada ?
7. The team will win the match if they.....(having) their best players.
8. Hala.....(not)go to work if she feels ill tomorrow
- 9.He.....(do) better if he practises every day.
10. -.....(Are) you come if he invites you?
11. I'll study maths if I.....(goes) to the university.

12. If I go to the shops, I'll.....(buys) a new game.
13. The teacher will not be happy if you.....(not) do your homework..
14. What(you do) if you win the competition ?.
15. If my dad gets home early, I'll.....(being) happy.
16. If Ali passes his exams, he.....(would) go to university.
17. How.....(you feel) if you pass your exams ?
18. The government plans.....(plant) a lot of trees along the sides of streets.
19. What do I need.....(buying) from the shops, Mum ?
20. If we keep.....(to burn) fossil fuels, climate change will get worse.
21. You can choose.....(recycling) your plastic bottles.
22. We can avoid.....(cut) down the trees by building the road in a different place.
23. Do you enjoy.....(camped) in the mountains ?
24. My friend suggests.....(spends)the midyear holiday in Luxor..
25. Doing sports helps you.....(keeping) fit.
26. I'd love.....(attending) your birthday party.
27. I can't imagine.....(to live) in the city. I don't like noisy places.
28. Would you mind.....(lends) me your camera?
29. We're planning(fly) to Europe for our holiday next year.
30. This player intends.....(not retiring) this year. He is going to play for two more seasons.
31. Hany denied.....(breaks) the window.
32. Ahmed hopes..... (get) tickets to the concert next month.
33. I prefer.....(to listening) the news on radio.
34. My parents wouldn't allow me(going) to the party.
35. Could you stop..... (make) that noise for a moment?
36. When you go diving, you should avoid.....(damaged) the coral reefs.
37. I'd like..... (express) my thanks for your kindness
38. Wet lands are important for the environment.....(that's why) we are losing a lot of it every year.
39. Having more floods.....(why) a lot of the world's ice is melting.
40. Deserts can be very dangerous habitats.....(That's why) hundreds of tourists like to visit them.
41. A large amount of seagrass has disappeared.....(because) there's an environmental project to grow new seagrass.
42. Sally can't speak well.....(so) she has a sever sore throat.
43. Ali is quite poor.....(because) he has expensive clothes.
44. Nany is successful.....(that's why) she studies hard.
45. Helmy is angry.....(that's because) he doesn't speak to us.

Unit (9)

1.Dalia and Reem are taking about sustainable products.

Dalia.What do you do to help the environment?
Reem: (1).....
Dalia:Paper bags!(2).....?
Reem : Because plastic bags aren't sustainable.
Dalia:(3).....?
Reem : You can use rechargeable batteries, too.
Dalia How do you think we can save energy at home?
Reem:(4).....-
Dalia (5)..... You ere right
Reem : Don't forget that we have to save our planet.

2.Ayman and Ashraf are talking about renewable energy.

Ayman: Hello Ashraf. What are you reading ?
Ashraf: Hello, Ay man. (1).....
Ayman: (2).....?
Ashraf: It is about renewable energy.
Ayman: (3)..... ?
Ashraf: In my opinion, it's our hope in the future.
Ayman: What are the forms of renewable energy ?
Ashraf: (4).....
Ayman: What do you think of solar energy projects in Egypt ?
Ashraf: (5).....

3.Munir is at a mobile phone shop looking for a good mobile phone to buy.

Assistant : Good evening. Can I help you ?
Munir : Good evening. (1).....
Assistant : We have a good collection of new mobile phones.(2).....?
Munir : It's great! (3).....?
Assistant : It's 7000 pounds.
Munir : It's very expensive. (4)
Assistant :This mobile is cheaper. (5).....
Munir : Really? Japanese mobile phones are very good. I'll buy it.
Assistant : Here you are.
Munir : Thanks.

4.Atef : What are you reading?
Hamdi : (1).....
Atef : What is the article about?
Hamdi: (2).....
Atef : Global warming!.....?
Hamdi : It means the increase of temperature.
Atef : Can we solve this problem?
Hamdi : (3).....
Atef : (4).....?
Hamdi : We can solve it by plant more trees.
Atef : (5).....

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

produce - environment - kept - reduce - initiatives - keeps

Our country has taken great steps to (1).....our waste through (2).....to recycle it. If we (3)..... .. recycling rubbish, our country would be cleaner. However, great efforts are done these days to keep the (4)..... clean.

give - stay - stayed - grow - simpler - easier

We have lived in the city for many years. We are going to (1)..... up living in the city because we want to (2)..... our own vegetables and live a (3).....life. If we (4).....in the city, we wouldn't be able to do that.

bad - sustainable - rechargeable - control - get - getting

I always used to (1).....the newest phone. I have stopped doing that now because it isn't (2)..... Oh, and now I use (3).....batteries for the TV remote (4)..... and my computer mouse.

opinion - Personally - countryside - use - disagree - used

Some people like living in big cities and other people don't like it.(1)..... I think that living in big cities is very difficult now. In my (2).....living in the (3).....is much quieter, cleaner and healthier. Our grandparents (4) to live in villages. What do you think about that ?

doing - light - off - to do - rechargeable - coal

We should try to save energy as much as possible. We can do many things to save energy like using energy-saving (1).....bulbs and (2) batteries. We

should turn(3).....the devices and the lights that we don't need. Our bad habits that we used (4).....in the past should be stopped.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 is a tall tropical plant with hollow stems that is used for making furniture.

- a. Wood b. Bamboo c. Metal d. Grass

2.....means that it can be filled again with electric power.

- a. Rechargeable b. Reusable c. Recycled d. Damaged

3.....means able to be used again.

- a. Reduced b. Rechargeable c. Reusable d. Redolent

4.....is a small plant which has started to grow from a seed.

- a. Tree b. Seedling c. Bush d. Jungle

5.means causing little or no damage to the environment and therefore able to continue for along time.

- a. Surrounded b. Electrical c. Simple d. Sustainable

6. You should save some money. The word "save" can be replaced by.....

- a. keep b. waste c. borrow d. find

7. The antonym of the word "higher" is.....

- a. nicer b. lower c. heavier d. lighter

8. Salim is a little football player. He is 11 years old. The word "little" here means.....

- a. old b. young c. strong d. small

9. We add the prefix.....to get the antonym of the word "usual".

- a. re- b. im- c. un- d. ir-

10. The suffix.....can be used to get the adjective from the word "environment".

- a.-al b.-ment c.-ed d.-ing

11.....is a machine that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm.

- a. Air heating b. Air Filter c. Air conditioning d. Air bag

12. To.....means to say you will do something.

- a. produce b. promise c. save d. reduce

13.means damage something so badly that you can't repair it.

- a. Discover b. Absorb c. Fix d. Destroy

14. It takes six hours to arrive to her house. Her house is in a/an.....area.

- a. close b. easy c. remote d. lazy

15. Solar farms produce green electricity. The synonym of "produce" is.....

- a. consume b. use c. make d. join

16. It's an easy lesson. I'll explain it to you. "Easy" is the synonym of.....

- a. complicated b. complex c. simple d. cheap
17. Elephants are huge animals. "Huge" is the antonym of.....
- a. easy b. slow c. safe d. small
18. The prefix.....can be used to form the opposite of expensive.
- a. re- b. in - c. im - d. un-
19. This car costs a lot of money. It's so expensive. The antonym of the word "expensive" is...
- a. amazing b. cheap c. far d. tidy
20. To get the adjective of "sustain", you add the suffix.....
- a.-al b.-able c.-ment d.-tion
21. Solar energy is a cheap type of energy. The antonym of "cheap" is.....
- a. dirty b. expensive c. clear d. harmful
22. We can add the prefix.....to the word "expensive" to form the opposite.
- a. re- b. im- c. in- d. un-
23. The earthquake destroyed the old houses in our city. The synonym of the word "destroyed" is.....
- a. damaged b. repaired c. produced d. fixed
24. A.....is a machine that you can control from far away.
- a. water wheel b. remote control
c. wind turbine d. solar panel
25. The solar energy doesn't disappear when you use it. It is.....
- a. non-renewable b. expensive c. renewable d. heavy
26.happens when green land becomes desert.
- a. Earthquake b. Desertification c. Deforestation d. Drought
27. A.....is an area of a country.
- a. region b. village c. town d. city
28. A solar.....is an area with many solar panels that provides electricity.
- a. farm b. energy c. power d. pool
29. He always.....me, I can't talk while he is talking .
- a. creates b. gives c. interrupts d. plans
30. This rose is a beautiful flower. We can replace "beautiful" with
- a. soft b. safe c. pretty d. ugly
31. The antonym of the word "totally" is.....
- a. partially b. probably c. totally d. perfectly
32. Rock climbing is a dangerous sport. The antonym of the word "dangerous" is.....
- a. serious b. unsafe c. certain d. safe

33. The introduction of the new storybook is amazing. The antonym of the word "introduction" is.....
- a. series b. conclusion c. start d. preface
34. The antonym of the word "pretty" is.....
- a. beautiful b. amazing c. boring d. ugly
35. Green energy reduces the pollution. The antonym of the word "reduces" is.....
- a. decreases b. lows c. cuts d. increases
36. To get the noun from the verb "farm", we add the suffix.....
- a.-ed b.-ing c. -ly d.-tion
37. We add the prefix.....to get the opposite of "advantage".
- a. un- b. in- c. dis- d. re-
38. The suffix.....can be used to get the adjective from the verb "live".
- a.-ment b.-ing c.-ed d.-ion
- 39.The trainer excluded Sami from the team. The antonym of "excluded" is.....
- a. contained b. included c. reduced d. increased
40. An.....is an important plan to achieve an aim or solve problems.
- a. solution b. suggestion c. initiative d. thought
41.means making or producing.
- a. Dying b. Disappearing c. Creating d. Throwing
42. A.....is a view showing an area of land.
- a. landscape b. landfill c. plate d. area
43. A large area of a country or of the world is a.....
- a. region b. season c. reason d. result
44.means growing crops or keeping animals on a farm.
- a. Recycling b. Forming c. Farming d. Harming
45. To make something better, or to become better means
- a. disprove b. approve c. remove d. improve
46. Good for the environment or continuous means.....
- a. nonrenewable b. ended c. harmful d. sustainable
47.means feeling afraid.
- a. Kind b. Brave c. Frightened d. Famous
48. Very big is the.....of enormous.
- a. synonym b. opposite c. antonym d. different
49. To give the opposite of "expensive" we add the prefix "....."
- a. im b. in c. dis d. miss
50. We get theof "amaze" by adding the suffix "ing".
- a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. In the past, people.....(not use to use) energy-saving light bulbs.
2. We used to.....(wasting) water, but now we try to save it.
3. I.....(don't) use to have an electric toothbrush, but now I've got one.
4. Mum.....(use to) get plastic bags at the supermarket, but now she gets paper ones.
5. Dad didn't use to.....(turned) off his computer at night, but he does now.
6. My grandparents didn't.....(use sent) emails - they wrote letters.
7. Adel's grandfather didn't.....(used) to know how to drive.
8. More land..... (become) desert if there were more droughts.
9. We used..... (waste) water, but now we try to save water.
10. If there(are) more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.
11. Would you buy solar panels for your house if you.....(have) enough money?
12. Did he.....(used) to ride bikes ?
13. If there..... (are) more mangrove trees along the coast, there would be fewer floods.
14. If we had more money, we.....can) buy that new phone in the shop window.
15. If we.....(live) in Hurghada, we would go to the beach.
16. Those farmers.....(move) if there was another flood.
17. She.....(not be) an environmental scientist if she didn't love nature.
18. What.....(will) you do if you got a job in a different city ?
19. What.....(will) it produce if the factory used fossil fuels?
20. The street is very nice. It.....(be) ugly if we didn't plant more trees.
21. If we had more money, (can buy) that new phone in the shop window.
22. Did Waleed.....(used) to read newspapers?
23. The volleyball team would win the match if they.....(have) better players.
24. If I.....(am) you, I'd travel to a European country.
25. If he was tall, he.....(can) play basketball.
26. If he.....(doesn't) hate flying, he would travel by plane.
27. Yasser would probably get high marks if the teacher.....(encourages) him.
28. If we had more time, we.....(will) visit your cousins in Greece.
29. Ali.....(doesn't) use to speak English when he was five.
30. What,.....(do) you use to learn at primary school ?
31. If they.....(not cut down) so many trees, they would have bigger forests.
32. We used to.....(gets) our shopping in bags.
33. She.....(doesn't) use to come late.
34. If I.....(am) taller, I would play basketball.
35. If I went to England, I would.....(visited) London.
36. What(will) you do if you had money?
37. If he cut his hand, we.....(will) take him to hospital.
38. If he arrived early,(he would) catch the train?

Unit 10 To space and back

Finish the following dialogue:

1.Younis is searching for information on the internet.

Tarek : What are you doing, Younis?
Younis : (1).....
Tarek : (2).....?
Younis : The Hubble Telescope is a space telescope.
Tarek : (3).....?
Younis : It orbits the Earth.
Tarek : Is it big?
Younis : (4).....
Tarek : Can you show me its photo?
Younis : (5).....

2.Noura and Hala are talking about DrFarouk BI-Baz.

Noura : Good evening Hala. How are things ?
Hala : Good evening Noura (1).....
Noura : Have you heard about Dr Farouk El-baz ?
Hala : (2).
Noura ; (3).....?
Hala : I heard that he helped the astronauts a lot using satellites.
Noura : (4)?
Hala : Yes, he helped Egypt a lot,
Noura :How did he help Egypt ?
Hala ; (5)That's because water in the Western Desert is really useful.

3.Mazen has got lost in Port Said and he asks a taxi driver to help him to reach the Sun hotel.

Mazen : Excuse me. Can you help me ?
Taxi driver: Of course, (1).....?
Mazen : (2)
Taxi driver: Walk along this road and then turn right. Do you want me to take you there ?
Mazen : (3)Is it far from here ?
Taxi driver: (4)
Mazen : Is there a museum near the hotel ? Taxi driver: Yes, there is the Egyptian Museum.
Mazen : Thanks. (5) ?

Taxi driver: The ticket of the museum costs 20 pounds.

4.Kamal is talking with his mother about the best way to help the community.

Kamal : Mom, some of my friends and I decided to make something useful for our neighbourhood. What's your opinion ?
Mother: (1).....! What is your plan ?
Kamal : (2)What do you think we should do ?
Mother: (3).....
Kamal : Collecting rubbish is one of our plans. (4).....?
Mother: You can also plant some trees.
Kamal : But planting trees needs money. (5).....?
Mother: Sure. I will give some money to help you do that.
Kamal : Thank you, mum. You're very helpful.
Mother: I'm very proud of you, son.

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

have - walked - robot - Mars - has - astronaut

Man had dreamt of travelling into space before achieving it in the 20th century. Man (1) on the moon during the 1960s. A space station (2) been built and then a space (3).....was invented. Do you think we will be able to walk on (4) in the 21st century?

planets - telescope - had left - trip - left - sensor

Yesterday, we went on a school (1).....to the planetarium. Before we (2)....., our science teacher gave us a lecture about it. There, we used a huge (3)..... and could see the (4).....

didn't - everywhere - send - take - make – had

The mobile phone is one the most important modern inventions. It has many advantages as you can use it (1).....and you can (2)photos with it. You can also (3).....and receive emails by it. People (4)used the telephone for a long time before the mobile was invented.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An.....is a person who travels into space.

- a. writer b. astronaut c. astronomer d. astrologer

2. A piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away is called a.....

- a. telescope b. glasses c. wheel d. robot

3. The space.....is a large spacecraft where people live and work.

- a. robot b. telescope c. satellite d. station

4. The.....is a force which attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth.

- a. space b. gravity c. satellite d. jet

5. A.....is a machine in space that goes around the Earth.

- a. plane b. spacecraft c. satellite d. comet

6. A/An.....is a person who studies something carefully.

- a. player b. actor c. painter d. researcher

7. In 1608, the telescope was invented. That means that it was

- a. moved b. encouraged c. designed d. showed

8. Nora helped to organise an important sports event. The word "organise" in the sentence means

- a. leave b. arrange c. arrive d. choose

9. You can make an adverb from the adjective "successful" by adding the Suffix

- a. -al b. -ly c. -er d. -y

2. We add the suffix to get the noun from the word "Italy".

- a. -er b. -ment c. -ian d. -ing

10. I haven't been to the club recently. The word "recently" can be replaced by the word

- a. early b. lately c. well d. hard

11. The prefix" " gives the opposite of the word "correct".

- a. un - b. ir- c. im - d. in-

12. There is a cafe far away. The word "far away" can be replaced by" ".

- a. near b. close c. remote d. nearby

13. We collect some money for a specific purpose. The synonym of the word "specific" is" ".

- a. common b. general c. particular d. Distant

14. A is a large spacecraft where people live and work.

- a. satellite b. lens
c. rocket d. space station

15. To get the adverb of the adjective "successful", we add the suffix

d. belong

33. The _____ is a machine which can receive or read information that is sent by a satellite.
a. sensor b. helmet c. satellite receiver d. GPS system
34. The synonym of the word "far" is
a. remote b. nearby c. next d. close
35. If we add the suffix to the word "wire", we get the adjective.
a. -ion b. -y c. -less d. -ful
36. The is information or an instruction that is sent by sound, light, etc
a. sign b. signal c. site d. sensor
37. The person who helps tourists to know the history of the monuments is called a/an.....
a. astronomer b. sailor c. editor d. guide
38. They live in a huge house. The synonym of the word "huge" is "....."
a. tiny b. small c. enormous d. easy
39. The prefix "....." gives the antonym of the word "possible".
a. un- b. ir- c. in- d. im -
40. You can make an adjective from the word "Japan" by adding the suffix
a. -tian b. -ese c. -ion d. -tion
41. The word "public" is a/an
a. verb b. adjective c. preposition d. adverb
42. I can't stay in one place for too long. The synonym of the word "stay" is ".....".
a. leave b. sleep c. remain d. close
43. The antonym of "public" is
a. private b. general c. common d. popular
44. The elephants aren't small animals; they are
a. lazy b. active c. huge d. tiny
45. To form the adverb of the word "careful", we add the suffix
a. - ion b. - ly c. - ity d. - ment
46. Some fish have bright colours. The antonym of the word "bright" is
a. colourful b. dull c. right d. shiny
47. Pollution is a very hard problem. The synonym of the word "hard" is
a. free b. available c. general d. difficult
48. We add the prefix to form the opposite of the word "possible".
a. im- b. ir- c. un- d. dis -
49. The is the person who works on a ship.
a. guide b. builder c. sailor d. astronaut

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Have you ever (using) a telescope ?
2. What have you been (dream) of since you were young ?
3. "I (be) to this restaurant before. Is it good ?" - "Yes, it is."
4. Ahmed (read) three books this week. He loves reading !

5. Heba (do) her homework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet.
9. Before his death, the author (publish) his latest collection of short stories.
7. Yesterday, I went to the club after (finish) my work.
8. Hoda did very well in the test because she (revise) carefully.
38. Malak did not want to start reading the book until she (prepare) dinner.
9. Munir (not try) Japanese food before he went to the new Japanese restaurant.
10. Nada has (win already) a gold medal.
11. Mrs Mona has (be) teaching English since 2001.
12. I've been (do) this hobby since last year.
13. You look tired. What (had) you been doing ?
14. They have been (played) for three hours now.
15. How many people (walked) on the moon by the end of the 20th century ?
16. I didn't send the report until I (revise) it.
17. I hadn't been to Karim's house since he (paints) it yellow.
18. Fatma (has) never heard Italian before she went to Rome.
19. We (take) a taxi to the beach because the bus had already left.
20. Younis (read) a new story for an hour, he is still reading it.
21. Have you (be) waiting for the bus for a long time ?
22. Haytham has (create) an app already.
23. I have already (came) to school.
24. When Ayman arrived at the station, the train (leaving) already.
25. Before he (go) to school, he had packed his bag.
26. We (don't) decide to have lunch until we had visited the museum.
27. Had he (leave) our tickets before he went to the show ?
28. She had succeeded last week so she (be) happy.
29. By the time he (goes) to bed, he had watched the film.
30. The river (is) very dry because it hadn't rained for weeks.
31. Aya knew the best room in the hotel because she had (be) there before.
32. Scientists (did) a lot of research before the first person walked on the moon in 1969.
33. After (studied) the moon, Farouk El Baz started studying deserts on the Earth.
34. After we (collect) all the necessary information last week, we did the research.
35. After Nada (cooks) the food, her visitors arrived.
36. Before (listened) to the radio, Ali had done his homework.
37. After Ola had studied her lessons, she (goes) out.
38. The boy ran away as soon as he (seeing) the snake.

Finish the following dialogue

1.Sara and Nawal are talking about jobs in the media

Sara : Would you like to have a job in the media?
Nawal : (1).....
Sara : What job would you like to do?
Nawal : (2).....
Sara : (3).....?
Nawal : Because I love writing and I am interested in the news.
Sara : I think you will be successful.
Nawal : (4).....?
Sara : I want to be a web designer.
Nawal : (5).....

2.Ahmed and Hassan are talking about their future jobs.

Ahmed: Hi, Hassan. Can I ask you some questions ?
Hassan : (1).....
Ahmed : (2)?
Hassan : Ves, I like media so much,
Ahmed: (3).....-.....?
Hassan: I like the job of newsreader so much.
Ahmed: What skills needed for this job ?
Hassan : (4)..... .What about your favourite future job ?
Ahmed: (5).....
Hassan : Great. The photographer is a great job.

3.Fahd has finished reading “Lord of the Flies”.

Fahd : I finished reading "Lord of the Flies".
Adam : What is it?
Fahd : (1).....-.....
Adam :(2).....?
Fahd : The British writer William Golding wrote it.
Adam :(3).....-.....?
Fahd -It is about some school boys who had to live on an island after their plane crashed in the sea and the pilot died.
Adam : Can I borrow it?
Fahd : (4).....

Adam : (5).....

4.Magda and Old are talking about Dr Farouk FI Raz.

Ola : Hi Magda! How was your first day at work?
Magda :(1).....
Ola : Fantastic! You were so worried about your new job.
Magda : Well, I have some good news for you.
Ola : (2).....?
Magda : It is about your favourite scientist Dr Farouk El Baz.
Ola : (3).....
Magda: Have you heard that he will visit your factory?
Ola : (4)..... ! When?
Magda: I don't know. I think it will be a good chance to meet him.
Ola: (5).....

5.Amira is talking to Nancy who is going to the bookshop.

Amira : Hi, Nancy.
Nancy : Hi, Amira.
Amira : Where are you going?
Nancy : (1)Will you come with me ?
Amira : (2).....Why are you going to the bookshop ?
Nancy : To buy a pen and a notebook for my sister. (3)..... ?
Amira ; Yes, I went to school yesterday. (4) ?
Nancy : Because I got up late. Did you have any homework ?
Amira : (5).....We should do the exercises page 57.
Nancy : Thank you very much .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

said - famous - wonderful - told - English - Egyptian

The first (1).....writer to win the Nobel Prize for the Arabic literature was Naguib Mahfouz. There are many (2).....names in the Egyptian literature. Our teacher(3).....us that he had written a lot of (4).....novels and short stories.

Engineer - be – journalist – successful – articles – been

It's important to choose the right job that you would like to do. For me, I would like to be a/an (1) because I like researching and

writing news (2) I know that it won't (3) an easy job, but I will do my best to be a/an (4) one.

replaced - said - told - stuck - burst - swam

Yesterday, a large water pipe (1).....and the city was under water for 6 hours. A local witness(2).....that some people were (3).....and couldn't move. The problem was solved when people (4).....the pipe with another one.

interesting - climbing - be - interested - mountains - was

Some people do strange and dangerous sports. For example, my friend is (1).....in climbing (2) He dreams of (3) Mount Everest in the future to (4)like Omar Samra who did it in May, 2013.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. Ais someone who writes news reports.

a. cameraman b. oculist c. journalist d. dentist

2. A person whose job is to read the news on TV or radio is a.....

a. director b. newsreader c. author d. writer

3.is to break open suddenly.

a. First b. Wet c. Burst d. Thirst

4. A.....is a person who has seen an accident, crime etc.

a. witness b. illness c. fitness d. guilty

5. A.....is sound produced by a person when they speak.

a. voice b. hug c. breathe d. breath

6. A camera.....is a person whose job is to film thing.

a. lens b. photo c. operator d. operation

7. A person whose job is to take photographs is a.....

a. graffiti b. photocopier c. photographer d. manager

8. A.....is the person who rules a city or area.

a. thief b. president c. governor d. graduate

9.means not able to move.

a. Sing b. Stuck c. Smell d. Small

10.means succeed in passing your exams at university.

a. Resigned b. Retired c. Fired d. Graduated

11.means according to what you have heard is true.

a. Enormously b. Unfortunately c. Apparently d. Passively

12.The word "untypically" is the antonym of the word

a. normally b. exceptionally c. unusually d. strangely

13. It's good that you keep your parents' trust. The antonym of the word "trust" is ...

- a. confidence b. design c. interest d. distrust
14. This film is very boring. I won't watch it again. The antonym of the word "boring" is.....
- a. silly b. uninteresting c. unusual d. interesting
15. The synonym of the word "ordinarily" is
- a. exceptionally b. normally c. especially d. unusually
16. Air fills everywhere around us. The antonym of the word "everywhere" is a. all around b. no longer c. nowhere d. well rounded
17. The synonym of the word "cross" is
- a. calm b. angry c. tiny d. brave
18. She is still sick. She can't go home. The antonym of the word "still" is
- a. nothing b. no where c. no longer d. no way
19. We add the suffix to get the noun from the verb "design".
- a. - ed b. - y c. - er d. - ly
20. To get the adjective of the verb "interest", we add the suffix
- a. -ment b. -ive c. -ing d. -able
21. The synonym of the word "interesting" is
- a. fascinating b. boring c. uninteresting d. calm
22. We add the prefix "....." to mean do something again.
- a. re b. ful c. ness d. dis
23. The antonym of "expensive" is.....
- a. inexpensive c. cheap c. ugly d. A & B
24. "Unfortunately" and "Unluckily" are.....
- a. antonyms b. synonyms c. opposite d. nouns
25. We add the suffix "....." to for the noun from "govern".
- a. ist b. al c. ly d. or
26. A.....is a person who presents a programme.
- a. witness b. spectator c. presenter d. interview
27.is to leave a job or stop working because of old age.
- a. Retire b. Inquire c. Acquire d. Trial
28. A person who specializes in languages is a.....
- a. language b. linguist c. translator d. interviewer
29.is to send a programme or some information by radio or TV.
- a. Broadcast b. Waste c. Export d. Import
30.means usual, not different.
- a. Formal b. Informal c. Imaginative d. Normal
31. He hates loud music. The antonym of "hates" is.....
- a. dislikes b. opposes c. objects d. likes
32. We add the prefix "....." to mean do something again.
- a. re b. ful c. ness d. dis
33. To get the adjective from "administrate" we add the suffix ".....".

- a. ive b. ion c. ness d. ly
34. The antonym of "....." is "ugly"
- a. beautiful b. enormous c. tiny d. hard
35. The "....." of "woman" is "female".
- a. antonym b. opposite c. synonym d. verb
36. They were able to mend the pipe. We can replace "mend" with.....
- a. mix b. oxen c. fix d. prepare
37. Shahd did a successful experiment in the lab and found a new cure. She is a/an.....
- a. journalist b. mathematician c. scientist d. explorer
38. I enjoyed talking to you Mr Hatem. It was a useful
- a. article b. map c. photo d. conversation
39. The suffix can form the noun from the verb "recycle".
- a. -ed... b. -ing c. -al d. -ment
40. We add the suffix to get the adjective from the noun "education".
- a. -ing.. b. -ly c. -al d. -tion
41. The synonym of the word "noisy" is
- a. loud b. busy c. quiet d. pleased
42. The synonym of the word "true" is
- a. delighted b. displeased c. correct d. false
43. There was nobody in the theatre. The antonym of the word "nobody" is.....
- a. no one b. everyone c. none d. nothing
44. The junior team won the final match. The antonym of the word "won" is.....
- a. lost . b. succeeded c. passed d. followed
45. Talia can finish the race in 2.5 minutes. The antonym of the word "finish" is
- a. end . b. complete c. start d. close
46. The..... is a day or time for people to celebrate something.
- a. competition b. interview c. meeting d. festival
47. A..... is a situation when groups of people meet to discuss something.
- a. festival b. meeting c. show d. exhibition
48. A..... is something that tells you about something dangerous or bad that might happen.
- a. invitation b. festival c. warning d. review
49. The synonym of the word "true" is.....
- a. possible b. wrong c. false d. right
50. The test was really hard. The antonym of the word "hard" is.....
- a. right b. difficult c. far d. easy
51. I don't like poets. I think they're boring. The antonym of the word "boring" is.....
- a. lazy b. usual c. exciting d. similar
52. This project is wonderful. It 'll help develop the village. The synonym of the word "wonderful" is.....
- a. awesome b. similar c. usual d. boring
53. These bags are all different. Which one is yours ? The antonym of the word "different" is.....
- a. similar b. false c. interesting d. exciting

54. She is a famous artist. The antonym of the word "famous" is
a. unknown b. great c. same d. right
55. We add the suffix.....to get the noun from the verb "meet".
a.-ment b.-ed c.-ly d.-ing
56. The suffix.....can be used to get the noun from the verb "pollute".
a.-ment b.-ion c.-ed d.-ly
57. We add the suffix.....to get the noun from the verb "climb".
a.-ed b.-er c.-est d.-ful
58. We use the suffix.....to get the noun from the verb "warn"
a.-ing b. -ly c.-or d.-ion

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. A witness said that the building.....(is) on fire.
2. The police said that lots of mobile.....(stole) that year.
3. The man.....(said) us that the football tournament would start.
4. The scientists explained that the world.....(is warming) because there was climate change.
5. Samy said that he.....(is) tired).
6. Dalia said that it.....(will) be very hot on Monday.
7. Tarek said that the red team..... (have) won the match.
8. The teacher..... (explain) that those books had been interesting.
9. Heba said that they.....(don't) go to the museum.
10. She said that she had bought a car.....(yesterday)
11. There.....(were) a lot of water in the road.
12.(Were) there an accident yesterday ? - Yes, there was.
13. There (were) some milk in the fridge yesterday.
14. (Was) there many people in the library last week?
15. The owner explained that there.....(will) be over 100 new jobs.
16. The governor.....(told) that the park was the biggest in Egypt.
17. Soha said that.....(my) mobile was broken.
18. Munir.....(told to) me "I can't attend the party".
19. She said that she.....(be) reading.
20. The doctor told me that I..... (have to) take that medicine.
21. My mother..... (told me) "I will go shopping for an hour."
22. Ola..... (says to) Nadeen that she wants to buy a nice bag.
23. Ashraf told his daughter that he..... (is staying up) late at work that night.
24. Marwa says that she..... (went) to the club every Friday.
25. When I was young, I always.....(ride) bikes.
26. He.....(said) me that he would help me.
27. She said that she.....(has) bought the dress.
28. He said just now that he.....(was) travelling tomorrow.
29. He.....(hits) the tree and fainted.
30. Yasser made a bad mistake, so the teacher..... (punish) him.

Finish the following dialogue:

1. Manar and Eman are talking about goals and ambitions

Manar : Do you have future goals?

Eman : (1).....

Manar : What is your first goal?

Eman : I want to finish my education and join university.

Manar : (2).....?

Eman : I would like to join the faculty of medicine.

Manar : (3).....?

Eman : To help sick people get better. What about you?

Manar : (4).....

Eman : What does a robotic engineer do?

Manar (5).....

2. Heba and Mariam are talking about flying cars.

Heba : I think we now have the technology to make flying cars.

Mariam : (1).....

Heba : Engineers think flying cars will be more like helicopters than planes.

Mariam : (2).....?

Heba : That's because helicopters can take off from small areas in cities.

Mariam : (3).....

Heba : (4).....?

Mariam Yes, I think that they will use electricity.

Heba : Do you think that they will land on roofs of the buildings?

Mariam : (5).....

3. Amira and Noha are talking about life in the future.

Amira ; Good morning Noha. I watched a great programme on TV yesterday.

Noha : Good morning. (1).....?

Amira : it was about how life will be in the future.

Noha : (2).....?

Amira : Yes, it talked about robots.

Noha : What do you think robots can do in the future ?

Amira : (3).....They also talked about their roles in hospital.

Noha :(4)..... ! How can they help patients ?

Amira :(5).....

Noha : I think life will be easier in the future.

4.Mohamed is at the chemist's to buy some medicines for his father

Mohamed : Good evening, doctor. Can I have these medicines, please?

A chemist : Good evening. (1)..... . Let me see the prescription

Mohamed : (2)..... . Do you have all of them ?

A chemist : (3)..... . The last medicine isn't available today.

Mohamed : (4)..... ?

A chemist : It will be available tomorrow afternoon.

Mohamed : (5))..... ?

A chemist : Sorry. We don't have delivery services.

Mohamed : Never mind. I'll come tomorrow to get it.

A chemist : Great. Here is the rest of the medicines.

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

advice - able - capable - devices - charge - electricity

Have you heard of a shirt that can (1).....your phone? Scientists have made new fabric that produces (2).....as it moves. This means that we will be (3).....to charge our (4).....as we run or walk outside.

solar - are - Without - will be - energy - from

Clean energy comes (1).....the sun, which is our nearest star. The sun sends out huge amounts of energy. We call this the (2).....energy. (3).....the sun, life on earth would not continue. In the future, we (4)..... able to get all of our energy from solar farms and wind turbines for many years.

busy - should - online - disconnected - improve - improves

To get a good job isn't an easy thing. You have to (1).. your skills. You (2).....do some courses in English and computer. If you are (3).....you can do them (4) It's very important to take it seriously.

sure – reuse -by -pollute - into -polluted

We must keep our environment clean to live a healthy life. We shouldn't (1).....it by throwing any chemical wastes (2)..... rivers and seas. We must (3).rainwater and make (4).....that we save all kinds of energy.

have - future - past - comfortable - will - were

Our life now is different from our grandparents' life many years ago. It

(1)..... be also different from our grandchildren's life in the

(2)..... Our grandparents aren't able to enjoy our (3)..... life and our grandchildren will (4)..... a more comfortable one. It's the life tradition.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.reality is when a computer makes you think that you are in a real place using pictures and sounds.

- a. Virtual b. Social c. Popular d. Solar

2. The prefix"....." means one.

- a. tri b. bi c. mono d. er

3. We add the suffix.....to "cash" to form the adjective.

- a. il b. less c. er d. ment

4. The antonym of "amateur" is.....

- a. free b. professional c. unpaid d. cashless

5. "Protect" and.....are synonyms.

- a. save b. kill c. destroy d. damage

3. When you work, often without pay, to learn about a job means.....

- a. friendship b. shipping c. shopping d. internship

4.learning means learning that you can have on the internet.

- a. Home b. Offline c. Disconnected d. Online

5. A.....is a running race of around 42 kilometers.

- a. Marathon b. Falcon c. Trek d. quiz

6.means how much space is between two things.

- a. Pollution b. Population c. Distance d. Affection

7.A railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground is..

- a. airway b. subway c. highway d. monorail

8. A.....is an area of a town, city or the countryside.

- a. Brick b. Strike c. Effect d. District

9.means done without using money you can hold.

- a. Cashless b. Free c. Expensive d. Cheap

10.is the ability to do something well.

- a. Smell b. Sell c. Skill d. Skull

11. Something that shows you have special training to do a job is a..... qualification.

- a. stolen b. Hidden c. professional d. amateur

12. A.....is a special place where people can cycle on roads.

- a. cycle loom b. cycle map c. cycle lane d. cycle mop
13. Somebody who helps a person do their job is an.....
- a. seller b. customer c. client d. assistant
14.are things used to operate a vehicle or machine.
- a. Fuel b. Key c. Controls d. Compete
15.means certainly, with doubt.
- a. Definitely b. Difficulty c. Mysterious d. Funny
16. An.....player is a player of online video games.
- a. e-book b. e-mail c. e-sport d. website
17.means probably going to happen or probably true.
- a. Unlikely b. Impossible c. Imaginary d. Likely
18. A.....engineer is a person whose job is to design or work with robots.
- a. antibiotic b. robotic c. toiler d. untidy
19. A.....is a machine that can make copies of whole objects.
- a. Mp3 b. 3D glasses c. 3D printer d. keyboards
20.means how hot or cold something is.
- a. Pollution b. Temperature c. Drought d. Flood
21.is to prepare for a sports event by exercising.
- a. Train b. Plain c. Treat d. Trim
22. You can make an adjective from the noun "noise" by adding the suffix"....."
- a.-ful b.-er c.-y d. -ly
23. The prefix"....." can form the antonym of the word "possible"
- a. un b. dis c. im d. il
24. We add the prefix.....at the beginning of the word "agree to get the antonym of it.
- a. il b.ir c. in d. dis
25. The suffix.....can be used to get the adverb from the word "slight"
- a.- ful b.-able c. -ment d. -ly
26. The word "accept" is the synonym of the word ".....".
- a. refuse b. agree c. disagree d. come down
27. The suffix.....means 'without!
- a.-ful b. -ly c.-ness d. -less
28. To form the opposite from "ability" we add the prefix.....
- a. mis b. dis c. im d. ness
29. "Protect" and.....are synonyms.
- a. save b. kill c. destroy d. damage
30. The prefix"....." means one.
- a. tri b. bi c. mono d. er
31. The plane landed safely. The antonym of "landed" is.....
- a. took on b. took in c. took off d. took place
32. The antonym of "amateur" is.....

- a. free b. professional c. unpaid d. cashless

33. We add the prefix.....to get the opposite of agree.

- a. dis b. miss c. less d. ness

34.is the opposite of close.

- a. Near b. Sad c. Remote d. Cute

35.means use again.

- a. Mono b. Less c. Ness d. Re

35. We add the suffix.....to "cash" to form the adjective.

- a. il b. less c. er d. ment

36. We add "ly" to form the....."likely".

- a. verb b. adjective c. adverb d. noun

37. He achieved his goal and became a doctor. "Goal" here means.....

- a. ambition b. epidemic c. sight d. weight

38. He lives in a flat overlooking the Nile. We can replace "flat" with.....

- a. department b. important c. villa d. apartment

39. Drones are driverless. They use.....drivers.

- a. skilled b. lazy c. educated d. no

40. Flying cars could land far away. There word "land" here means.....

- a. area b. region c. come down d. fly

41.means how much space is between two things.

- a. Distance b. Apartment c. Accident d. Internship

42. To form the noun of the verb "account", we use the suffix.....

- a.-ive b.-able c.-ment d. -ant

43. Blood donation is very important, it may.....someone's life.

- a. live b. save c. accuse d. survive

44. She has the ability to create nice shapes with paints. The synonym of the word "create" is to.....

- a. explore b. discover c. invent d. invite

45. He managed to set up his own business after graduation. The antonym of "set up" is.....

- a. arrive b. protect c. fail d. finish

46.to get the antonym of the noun "ability", we use the prefix.....

- a. dis b. il c. re d. en

47. When you travel around a place in order to learn about it. This means you.....it.

- a. create b. explore c. achieve d. set up

48. When you don't get any money for your work. This means you work as a/an.....

- a. engineer b. architect c. volunteer d . trainer

49. When someone can't use a part of their body. This means he/she is.....

- a. professional b. disabled c. amateur d. renewable

50. We add the suffix.....to get the noun of "assist".
a. -ant b.-ment c.-al d. -ity
51. The education or teaching that you can have on the internet is called.....
a. virtual reality b. online learning c. solar panel d. business meeting
52. A doctor checks people who are ill. The word "checks" is the same as.....
a. ignores b. examines c. damages d. loses
53. It is safe to stay here. The antonym of the word "safe" is.....
a. dangerous b. smart c. fat d. tasty
54. We can make the opposite of "appear" by adding the prefix.....
a. im b. dis- c. un d. ir
55. If you have a problem, you should find a.....
a. challenge b. solution c. pollution d. population

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I think that more people will.....(rides) bikes in the future.
2. We won't(having) as many cars on the road.
3. There(well) be lots of challenges in the future.
4. We will have to..... (finds) new ways to grow food in the future.
5. We..... (doesn't) grow food in the same way in the future.
6. In future, I think we.....(aren't) produce electricity in lots of different ways.
7. It's very windy, so we(able) to go to the beach today.
8. In the future, do you think that all our energy.....(be) from the sun?
9. Dalia speaks Japanese, so she.....(apply) for the job in Tokyo.
10. In future, I think we.....(able) to produce electricity in lots of different ways.
11. She isn't good with numbers. She.....(will) be able to work as a maths teacher.
12. Nawal hopes that she..... (isn't) work as an engineer when she's older.
13. There will(been) more people in the city in 2050, I am not sure.
14. They are playing well now, They.....(wins) the match.
15. The phone is ringing, I.....(answer) it.
16.(There will) be lots of trees in your street?
17. Do you think al-Ahly will be able to.....(won) the World Cup for Clubs in the future ?
18. Nader hopes that he.....(able to) travel abroad when he graduates
19. What.....(you able to) do when you leave school?
20. I don't think that their company will be able to.....(competing) this international trade.
21. What do you think robots will be able.....(doing) in 2050?
22. I think people.....(able to) live on the moon in the future.
23. It has been said that there.....(are) houses under the sea water in the future.
24. (you be able to) travel into space in the future ?
25. Employees will be able.....(did) their work from home in the future.
26. Astronauts expect that they.....(are able to land) on Mars in the future.

Reading Comprehension

Read the following text, then answer the questions

Once, there was a poor farmer living in a village. He grew plants and raised animals. One day, he found that his goose had laid a yellow egg. When he picked it up, it was as heavy as metal and he thought it was bad. He decided to take it home, and he soon found out that the egg was made of gold! Every morning, the same thing happened. The farmer soon became very rich. He sold all the golden eggs at the market. However, the farmer soon became greedy. He thought that there must be a lot of golden eggs inside the goose, so he killed it. When he had killed the goose, he found that there were no eggs inside it.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. The word "raised" animals is the same as.....

a. killed b. sold c. bought d. kept

2. Finally, the farmer became.....and lost the goose.

a. rich b. greedy c. happy d. lucky

3. The underlined word "it" refers to the.....

a. farmer b. goose c. egg d. story

b. Answer the following questions

4. Find in the passage words that mean "golden".

5. What is the moral of the story?

6. What would happen if the farmer didn't kill the goose?

2.I have a friend called Magdy who always pretends to know everything. Whenever a name is mentioned, he says he knows him. I believed Magdy until one day I found out that he was a big liar. Once he visited me when I was sitting with my cousin Mr. Samir Sadek, who happened to be a well famous writer. Before I introduced my friend to Mr. Samir, his eyes fell on one of the books, which was on the table.

Magdy at once said that the author of the book was one of his relatives, and started telling stories about the adventures they had together. He also said that Mr. Samir never wrote a book before discussing its ideas with him. Mr Samir asked my friend Magdy if he could recognize Mr Samir if he saw him. My friend assured him that he would.

With a loud laugh, he introduced himself to my friend who was so ashamed that he immediately left the house. Since that day, he does not meet me and he never says that he knows anything or anybody.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

B. Answer the following questions:

- 4. Why did Khalid regret about the car?
.....
- 5. Was the car legal? Why / Why not ?
.....
- 6. Summaries the last paragraph.
.....

4.Ahmed Zewail was born in 1946 in Egypt where he grew up. He went to Alexandria University. He finished his studies in the United States in 1974. After this, Dr Zewail worked at the University of California. In 1976, he became a professor at the California Institute of Technology. In 1998, Dr Zewail won the Benjamin Franklin Medal because he discovered the femto-second, which is one millionth of one billionth of a second. Many scientists, students and important people came to the ceremony and saw Dr Zewail receive his prize. One year later, Dr Zewail got the Nobel Prize in Chemistry. Dr Zewail lived in California and had four children. His wife, Dema Zewail is a doctor. He helped scientists to make new medicines. He died in 2016.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Dr Zewail won the Benjamin Franklin Medal at the age of....
a. 42 b.48 c.52 d.58
- 2. Dr Zewail got the Nobel Prize in.....
a. Physics b.Arts c. Peace d. Chemistry
- 3. The main idea of the passage is about.....
a.an Egyptian scientist b.Nobel Prize
c. California University d. technology

b. Answer the following questions:

- 4. Infer from the passage that Dr Zewail was popular.
.....
- 5. Predict how Egypt will be like with the help of the Egyptian scientists.
.....
- 6. Summarise the text in one sentence.
.....

5.Egyptians have a wonderful history in the Olympic Games, yet we haven't won any medals since 1984. During the last Olympic Games in Greece 2004, our athletes changed the picture. They won five different medals. Those medals brought smile and happiness to the people of Egypt. Egyptians in thousands went out to welcome the winners at Cairo Airport. They did it because they had something to be proud of. Winning a medal in the Olympics is not that easy. It needs planning, money and much training. We should start working for the next Olympic Games from now.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 1. The Egyptian athletes won.....medals in 2004.
a. four b.five c. three d.six
- 2. The main idea of the passage is about.
a. the history of Olympic Games b.the Egyptian athletes
c. Egyptian scientists d. the history of sport

مراجعته على تكوين السؤال وأنواعه

أولا سؤال المحادثة

كيفيه الاجابه على سؤال المحادثه

- ١ - يجب قراءة الحوار كاملا لفهم موضوع المحادثه لأن بعض الاجابات ممكن أن تكون في رأس السؤال أو في باقي المحادثه
- ٢ - نحدد هل مطلوب اجابه على سؤال أو مطلوب تكوين سؤال على الاجابه
- ٣ - اذا جاء في الاجابه (Yes / No) فهنا مطلوب سؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد
- ٤ - اذا بدأت الاجابه بفاعل فهنا مطلوب سؤال يبدأ بأداة استفهام

تذكر أن هناك (٣) أنواع رئيسية للسؤال

- ١ - سؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد وتكون الاجابة بـ (Yes - No) ويتكون السؤال كالآتي
.....? فعل أساسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد
- ٢ - سؤال يبدأ بكلمه استفهام وتكون الاجابة على أداة الاستفهام ويتكون السؤال كالآتي
.....? فعل أساسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد + كلمة استفهام
- ٣ - سؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد وبه كلمة (or) ويسمى سؤال التخيير وهنا لا تكون الاجابة بـ (Yes - No)
.....or.....? فعل أساسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد

الأفعال المساعدة لها أكثر من شكل كالآتي

Verb to be	am / is / are / was / were	الفعل الاساسي يكون (v+ ing)
Verb to do	do / does / did	الفعل الاساسي يكون مصدر
Verb to have	have / has / had	الفعل الاساسي يكون تصريف ثالث
Modal verbs	will / would / can / should	الفعل الاساسي يكون مصدر

أهم أدوات الاستفهام هي

- ١ - للسؤال عن المكان نستخدم (Where)
- ٢ - للسؤال عن السبب نستخدم (Why)
- ٣ - للسؤال عن المدة الزمنية نستخدم (How long)
- ٤ - للسؤال عن عدد المرات نستخدم (How often / How many times)
- ٥ - للسؤال عن الوقت نستخدم (When)
- ٦ - للسؤال عن العاقل نستخدم (Who)
- ٧ - للسؤال عن وسيلة المواصلات نستخدم (How)
- ٨ - للسؤال عن السعر أو الثمن نستخدم (How much / What price)
- ٩ - للسؤال عن غير العاقل نستخدم (What / Which)
- ١٠ - للسؤال عن العمر نستخدم (How old)
- ١١ - للسؤال عن اللون نستخدم (What colour)

أهم البوادي واللواحق

Prefixes & suffixes

◀ البادئة (Prefix) مقطع يضاف في أول الكلمة

◀ اللاحقة (Suffix) مقطع يضاف في آخر الكلمة

【Prefixes】

natural	unnatural	المقطع (un) يضاف للصفة لتكوين العكس	١
advantages	disadvantages	المقطع (dis) يضاف للأسم لتكوين عكس الاسم	٢
famous	infamous	المقطع (in) يضاف للصفة لتكوين العكس	٣
danger	endanger	المقطع (en) يضاف للأسم لتكوين الفعل	٤
cycle	recycle	المقطع (re) يضاف للفعل بمعنى يعيد	٥
renewable	nonrenewable	المقطع (non) يضاف للصفة لتكوين العكس	٦
possible	impossible	المقطع (im) يضاف للصفة لتكوين العكس	٧
cycle	bicycle	المقطع (bi) يضاف للفعل بمعنى ثنائي	٨
use	misuse	المقطع (mis) يضاف للفعل لتكوين العكس	
rail	monorail	المقطع (mono) يضاف للاسم بمعنى احادي	

【Suffixes】

nation	national	المقطع (al) يضاف للأسم لتكوين الصفة	١
weave / act	weaver / actor	المقطع (er / or) يضاف للفعل لتكوين الفاعل	٢
quick	quickly	المقطع (ly) يضاف للصفة لتكوين الحال	٣
wind	windy	المقطع (y) يضاف للأسم لتكوين الصفة	٤
surprise	surprised	المقطع (ed) يضاف للأسم لتكوين الصفة	٥
interest	interesting	المقطع (ing) يضاف للأسم لتكوين الصفة	٦
search	searching	المقطع (ing) يضاف للفعل لتكوين الاسم	٧
meaning	meaningful	المقطع (ful) يضاف للأسم لتكوين صفة ايجابية	٨
use	useless	المقطع (less) يضاف للأسم لتكوين صفة سلبية	٩
recharge	rechargeable	المقطع (able) يضاف للفعل لتكوين الصفة بمعنى قابل لـ	١٠
attract	attractive	المقطع (ive) يضاف للفعل لتكوين الصفة	١١
sad	sadness	المقطع (ness) يضاف للصفة لتكوين الاسم	١٢
invent	invention	المقطع (ion) يضاف للفعل لتكوين الاسم	١٣
robot	robotics	المقطع (ics) يضاف للاسم لتكوين اسم بمعنى (علم)	١٤
intern	internship	المقطع (ship) يضاف للاسم لتكوين معنى مهنة او حالة	١٥

Unit (7)

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الرئيسية

oasis	واحه	list	قائمة من
tourists	سياح	western	غربي
dates	بلح	shapes	أشكال
palm trees	شجر النخيل	meteorite	نيزك
wonders	عجائب	shooting star	شهاب
area	منطقة	bright	لامع
furniture	أثاث	surrounded by	محاط بـ
natural	طبيعي	grassland	أرض عشبية
location	موقع	coast	ساحل
wildlife	الحياة البرية	preserved	محفوظ
depression	منخفض	belong to	ينتمي الى
fossils	حفريات	remote	بعيد
species	فصائل	weather	الطقس
whales	حيتان	mongoose	النمس
skill	مهارة	thick	كثيف
avoid	يتجنب	fur	فرو
danger	خطر	appearance	مظهر
bite	يعض	endangered	معرض للخطر

Definitions أهر التعريفات

habitat	موطن	the natural home of a plant or animal
wonder	أعجوبة	something that makes you feel surprise and admiration
area	منطقة	a particular part of a country, town etc
natural	طبيعي	existing in nature and not made by people
polar	قطبي	relating to the North Pole or the South Pole
oasis	واحه	a place with water and trees in a desert
remote	بعيد	far from towns or other places where people live
fossil	حفريّة	a preserved animal or plant
species	فصائل	a group of animals or plants that belong to the same family
owner	مالك	someone who owns something
stable	استبل	a place where horses live

carriage	حظطور	a vehicle with wheels that is pulled by a horse
treat	يعامل	to behave towards someone or something in a particular way
depression	منخفض	a part of a surface that is lower than the other parts
mongoose	النمس	a small furry tropical animal that kills snakes and rats
fur	فرو	the thick soft hair that covers the bodies of some animals
length	طول	how long something is
endangered	معرض للخطر	to put someone or something in danger
deforestation	ازالة الغابات	the cutting or burning down of all the trees in an area
tongue twister	صعب النطق	a word or phrase that is difficult to say quickly

اختياري على التعريفات

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. An..... is a place with water and trees in a desert.

- a. island b. ocean c. oasis d. bank

2. The natural home of a plant or an animal is called a.....

- a. habit b. habitat c. project d. predict

3. An..... means a particular part of a country, town etc.

- a. era b. region c. area d. art

4. Relating to the North Pole or the South Pole means.....

- a. solar b. rural c. polar d. lunar

5. means existing in nature and not made by people.

- a. handmade b. industrial c. man-made d. natural

6. A..... is something that makes you feel surprise and admiration.

- a. wander b. usual c. normal d. wonder

7. A..... is a place where horses are kept.

- a. menu b. stable c. stadium d. studio

8. Someone who owns something is called an.....

- a. owner b. sailor c. engineer d. pioneer

9. mean a group of animals and plants of the same family.

- a. Spoke b. Spices c. Species d. Spring

10. means far from towns or other places where people live.

- a. Near b. Close c. Easy d. Remote

11. A..... is preserved animal or plant.

- a. fossil b. foil c. fuels d. coat

12. A..... is a part of a surface that is lower than the other parts.

- a. expression b. depression c. invention d. intention

13. To behave towards someone or something in a particular way means.....

- a. treat b. creep c. clear d. create

14. A..... is a vehicle with wheels that is pulled by a horse.

- a. plate b. carriage c. encourage d. fridge

15. A..... is a small furry tropical animal that kills snakes and rats.

- a. mongoose b. lion c. octopus d. mouse

16. The thick soft hair that covers the bodies of some animals is called.....

- a. fair b. ferry c. fur d. jar

17.means how long something is.

- a. width b. length c. price d. small

18. To put someone or something in danger means.....

- a. safe b. endanger c. rescue d. save

19.means the cutting or burning down of all the trees in an area.

- a. Cycling b. Deforestation c. Civilization d. Flood

20. Tongue.....is a word or phrase that is difficult to say quickly.

- a. forest b. twister c. poster d. taste

Synonyms & Antonyms

المترادفات والمتضادات

word	synonym	antonym	المعنى
far	remote	near - close	بعيد - قريب
natural	normal	manmade - artificial	طبيعي - صناعي
huge	enormous	small - tiny	ضخم - صغير
protect	save	destroy - damage	يحمي - يدمر
ancient	very old	modern - new	قديم - حديث
remote	far	near - close	بعيد - قريب
hard	difficult	easy	صعب - سهل
terrible	very bad	nice - wonderful	سيء - رائع
several	many	few	عديد - قليل
large	big	small	كبير - صغير
confusing	not clear	clear	مثير - واضح

Prefixes

prefix	المعنى	Prefix	المعنى
unnatural	غير طبيعي	unhappy	حزين
disadvantages	عيوب	endangered	معرض للخطر
infamous	غير معروف	uncovered	مكتشف

Suffixes

Suffix	المعنى	Suffix	المعنى
national	قومي	surprised	مدهش
quickly	بسرعة	meaningful	ذو معنى
windy	عاصف	confused	مرتبك / حائر

اختياري على Suffixes, prefixes, synonyms & antonyms

- The words beautiful and ugly are.....
a. equal b. the same c. synonyms d. antonyms
- We form theof "easy" by adding "ily".
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
- We form the adjective from "surprise" by adding the suffix.....
a. al b. ed c. ing d. B & C
- The antonym of "close" is.....
a. near b. remote c. easy d. local
- The word "....." is the synonym of the word "cut".
a. right b. tight c. bite d. kite

اختياري على استنتاج المعنى

- We should protect our environment. The word "protect" means.....
a. damage b. destroy c. kill d. save
- He won the prize so he was happy. The word "so" means.....
a. because b. because of c. as a result of d. as a result
- Now, People can read his book. This means that the book was.....
a. published b. stolen c. shocked d. writing
- This word is tongue-twister. It is.....to repeat quickly.
a. easy b. hard c. difficult d. B & C
- Do you know where lions live? - Yes, I know their.....
a. habit b. habitat c. spices d. ideas

تمارين كتاب Student's Book & Workbook

- In the museum, we saw some.... of animals that lived thousands of years ago.
a. fossils b. spices c. toils d. flutes
- The village is 80km from the nearest city. It is very.....
a. near b. close c. remote d. easy
- My grandmother always..... fruit in a jar with sugar and water.
a. sew b. plant c. preserve d. book
- The longest snake in the world is more than six metres in.....
a. long b. wide c. high d. length
- Scientists are still discovering new.....of plants and animals every year.
a. spades b. spices c. sports d. species
- The hotel on the beach has an interesting..... It looks like a ship!
a. shape b. manager c. owner d. shame
- Our house is.....by trees. It is difficult to see from the road.
a. planted b. grown c. surrounded d. moved
- He built a big fence around his fields tohis animals.
a. endanger b. respect c. die out d. protect
- Remember to.....your bottles with water before going to the desert.
a. fill b. feel c. fail d. empty
- I think that the internet is a.....of modern technology.
a. wander b. average c. wonder d. invention
- Siwa is a very famous.....in Egypt.
a. oasis b. oases c. oceans d. areas

ملخص جرامر الوحدة (7) في نقاط

أولاً : المبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط

١ - تبدأ الجملة بمفعول ثم (am - is - are) ثم تصريف تالت

فاعل + am - is - are + P.P.....by + مفعول

Egypt **is visited** by millions of tourists.
 Warm, wet areas **are called** a rainforest.
 The lake **is called** Al Nayzak Lake.

٢ - في حالة النفي نضع (not) بعد (am - is - are)

This area **isn't** always visited.
 Cars **are not** made in Tanta.

٣ - في حالة السؤال بمعنى هل يكون الشكل كالآتي

Is / Are + مفعول + P.P.....?

Is the park **cleaned** by people?
 Are the beds **made** by her?

٤ - في حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام يكون الشكل كالآتي

P.P.....? + مفعول + is / are + كلمة استفهام

How **is** football **played**?
 Where **are** cars **made**?

ثانياً : المبني للمجهول في الماضي البسيط

١ - تبدأ الجملة بمفعول ثم (was - were) ثم تصريف تالت

فاعل + was - were + P.P.....by + مفعول

Hundreds of fossils of ancient whales **were found** in 1902.
 The Great Wall of China **was built** with rice

٢ - في حالة النفي نضع (not) بعد (was - were)

The room **wasn't cleaned** well.
 My books **weren't taken** by her.

٣ - في حالة السؤال بمعنى هل يكون الشكل كالآتي

Was / Were + مفعول + P.P.....?

Was the book **written** by her?
 Were the emails **sent** yesterday?

٤ - في حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام يكون الشكل كالآتي

P.P.....? + مفعول + was / were + كلمة استفهام

When **was** the car **bought**?
 How **were** the letters **sent**?

Complete the following sentences with the correct form

1. Egypt is.....(**visiting**) by many tourists every year.
2. The lake(**has**) called the Shooting Star.
3. The national park is.....(**surround**) by grassland.
4. Gebel Elba.....(**doesn't**) visited very often.
5.(**Does**) the national park visited by many people?
6. Eggs are.....(**lay**) on the beach by turtles.
7. Hundreds of fossils.....(**are**) found in 1902.
8. A list of the new wonders.....(**made**) in 2007.
9. The city of Petra was.....(**names**) as a wonder.
10. The Taj Mahal.....(**were built**) by Shah Jahan.
11. The Great Wall of China was.....(**building**) with rice.
12. Fewer magazines are.....(**sell**) today by newsagents.
13. Many new cars.....(**make**) by robots in factories.
14. Our beaches are.....(**visiting**) by thousands of tourists.
15. Squash.....(**doesn't**) played by many students.

تمارين على أسئلة المهارات وموضوعات الكتابة1. Finish the following dialogue

Zinab is reading a novel called "Black Beauty"

- Atef : What are you doing?
 Zeinab : (1).....?
 Atef : What is the novel called?
 Zeinab : (2).....
 Atef : (3).....?
 Zeinab : It was written by Anna Sewell.
 Atef : What is the novel about?
 Zeinab : (4).....
 Atef : I like horses. How should we treat animals like horses?
 Zeinab : (5).....

2. Read and complete the text with words from the list (4 M)

is - are - star - shape - shop - bright

1. This natural lake is a three-hour drive from Hurghada. The lake (1).....called the shooting (2).....by locals because it is believed that a piece of a star (a meteorite) fell into it. The Lake is cut out of the rock in the (3)..... of an eye and is filled with the (4).....blue water of the Red Sea. It is described by the visitors as one of the best places to dive and swim.

team - preserved - preserving - belong - long - UNESCO

2. In 2005, the fossils at Wadi al-Hitan were studied by a (1).....of international scientists. The fossils were (2)..... really well and some of them were 21 meters in length. It was discovered that these whales (3).....to the same family of animals as camels and giraffes. The fossils are so important that Wadi al- Hitan was called a (4).....World Heritage Site in 2005.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions (6 M)

Ali lived in a big house with a garden. One day, he was reading an interesting story. When it got darker, he switched on the light. Suddenly, he heard a loud cry of "Help! Help "coming from the garden. He looked out of the window but he couldn't see anything. He heard the voice again. He thought that one of the neighbors' boys had climbed a tree and couldn't get down. He took his torch and walked to the garden. He searched it very well, but he couldn't find anybody. Finally, he thought that someone was playing a trick on him. So he went back to the house. As soon as he sat down, he heard the sound from behind him. It was sitting on the bookshelf, a large green and red bird. It was a parrot.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. Ali heard the voice.....

- a. four times b. twice c. three times d. once

2.was making the loud cry of help.

- a. The parrot b. Ali's friend
c. Ali's neighbour d. A neighbor's boy

3. Ali thought that someone was playing a.....on him.

- a. trick b. track c. game d. song

b. Answer the following questions

4. Find a word in the passage that means "turn on"

5. Why did he take a torch with him?

6. Where was the parrot sitting?

أهم موضوعات الكتابة في الوحدة الـ (7)



اشترك وفعل الجرس

طريقة كتابة الـ Review عن العجائب الطبيعية في مصر

١ - نذكر أن هناك العديد من العجائب الطبيعية في مصر

٢ - نذكر أسماء هذه العجائب

٣ - نتحدث عن كل واحدة منها بالتفصيل ماهي؟ وأين توجد؟ الأشياء الموجودة بها؟ ومميزاتها؟

Write about (110) words on

A review about Natural wonders of Egypt

العجائب الطبيعية في مصر

There are a lot of natural wonders in Egypt. I think people and visitors should know about them to enjoy visiting them. The most famous natural wonders are the White Desert National Park, Al Nayzak Lake and Gebel Elba. The White Desert National Park is an amazing place because it contains five oases with rocks. It is a wonder because the colours of the rocks change and look beautiful. Al Nayzak Lake is called the Shooting Star. It has the shape of an eye. It is one of the best places to dive and swim. Gebel Elba is a national park. Although it is a desert land, it is unusually green and home to many animals and birds.

هناك الكثير من العجائب الطبيعية في مصر. أعتقد أن الناس والزوار يجب أن يعرفوا عنهم للاستمتاع بزيارتهم. وأشهر العجائب الطبيعية هي محمية الصحراء البيضاء وبحيرة النيزك وجبل علبة. تعد محمية الصحراء البيضاء مكاناً رائعاً لأنها تحتوي على خمس واحات بالصخور. إنها عجيبة لأن ألوان الصخور تتغير وتبدو جميلة. تسمى بحيرة النيزك بنجم الشهاب. لها شكل عين. إنها واحدة من أفضل الأماكن للغطس والسباحة. جبل علبة هي محمية طبيعية. على الرغم من أنها أرض صحراوية، إلا أنها خضراء بشكل غير عادي وموطن لكثير من الحيوانات والطيور.

طريقة كتابة الـ Review عن المواطن (البيئات) المختلفة

- ١ - نكتب أن هناك العديد من المواطن المختلفة حول العالم
- ٢ - نكتب أسماء هذه البيئات
- ٣ - نكتب عن كل بيئة منفصلة . مكانها . حالة الجوبيها
- ٣ - نختم بالكتابة عن أهمية البيئات المختلفة ودورها في حماية الحيوانات والنباتات

Write about (110) words on

"A review of different habitats"

البيئات (المواطن) المختلفة

There are many different habitats around the world. These habitats are important for the life of people and animals on Earth. The main habitats are Coastal, Grassland, wetland and polar habitat. The Coastal habitat is found along the coast of the sea. The grassland habitat is usually found between mountains and deserts. It is a home of some animals. The wetland habitat is often covered by water. The polar habitats are found at the top and bottom of the Earth. They are covered by ice. They are the habitats of polar bears. The temperature there is freezing. Without these habitats, some animals would disappear from Earth.

هناك العديد من المواطن المختلفة حول العالم. هذه المواطن مهمة لحياة الناس والحيوانات على الأرض. والمواطن الرئيسية هي المواطن الساحلية والعشبية والأراضي الرطبة والقطبية. المواطن الساحلي يوجد على طول ساحل البحر. عادة ما توجد المواطن العشبية بين الجبال والصحاري. إنها موطن لبعض الحيوانات. غالباً ما تكون موطن الأراضي الرطبة مغطاة بالمياه. المواطن القطبية توجد في الجزء الجنوبي والشمالي من الأرض. وهي مغطاه بالجليد. وهي موطن الدببة القطبية. درجة الحرارة هناك متجمدة. بدون هذه المواطن ، تختفي بعض الحيوانات من الأرض.

Unit (8)

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الرئيسية

loom	نول النسيج	threads	خيوط
volunteer	متطوع	fabric	قماش
seagrass	عشب بحري	safe	آمن
along	بطول	healthy	صحي
including	يشمل	climate	مناخ
coast	الساحل	protection	حماية
herbs	أعشاب	familiar	مألوف
flood	فيضان	fossil fuels	وقود حفري
drought	جفاف	landfill sites	مواقع دفن / رمي القمامة
climate change	تغير المناخ	absorb	يمتص
greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحراري	renewable	متجدد
ink	حبر	recycling	إعادة استخدام
cartridge	خرطوشة حبر	weaving	النسيج

Definitions أهر التعريفات

seagrass	عشب بحري	a plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast
disappear	يختفي	to become impossible to see any longer
diver	غواص	someone who swims or works under water
speech	خطبة	is a formal talk about a particular subject
attractive	جذاب	beautiful and pleasant
naturally	بشكل طبيعي	in a way that is the result of nature
familiar	مألوف	well-known to you and easy to recognize
weaving	النسيج	making cloth, a carpet, a basket etc by crossing threads
traditional	تقليدي	part of the traditions of a country or group of people
weavers	نساجون	people whose job is to weave cloth
loom	نول النسيج	a machine on which thread is woven into cloth
threads	خيوط	long thin string of cotton, silk used to sew or weave cloth
fabric	قماش	cloth used for making clothes
ink	حبر	a coloured liquid used for writing or printing

cartridge	خرطوشة الحبر	a small container that has ink inside
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	damage caused to the air by chemicals and waste
landfill site	مواقع القمامة	a place where people leave rubbish on the land
melting ice	إذابة الجليد	a problem in the Arctic and Antarctic because of global warming
deforestation	قطع الغابات	When all the trees in an area are cut down
warmer seas	المياه الدافئة	something that can kill coral reefs
melt	يذوب	to become liquid

اختياري على التعريفات

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. A plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast, is called.....
a. seaside b. sailor c. sweet d. seagrass
2.is to become impossible to see any longer.
a. Appear b. Known c. Disappear d. Save
3. A.....is someone who swims or works under water.
a. diver b. astronaut c. dyer d. driver
4. A.....is a formal talk about a particular subject.
a. email b. blog c. block d. speech
5.means beautiful and pleasant.
a. Ugly b. Dirty c. Attractive d. Noisy
6.means in a way that is the result of nature.
a. Naturally b. Industry c. Manually d. Artificially
7. Well-known to you and easy to recognize means.....
a. familiar b. unfamiliar c. unknown d. difficult
8. Solar energy is a form of.....energy.
a. renewable b. ancient c. nonrenewable d. lazy
9. Air.....means damage caused to the air by chemicals and waste.
a. pollution b. balloon c. way d. line
10. A.....site is a place where people leave rubbish on the land.
a. funfair b. planetarium c. landfill d. landlord
11.Ice means a problem in the Arctic and Antarctic because of global warming.
a. Melting b. Floating c. Ringing d. Wasting
12. When all the trees in an area are cut down means.....
a. deforestation b. globalization c. flood d. drought
13. Something that can kill coral reefs means.....Seas.
a. Warmer b. Burner c. Ice d. Flying
14. A.....is a very large amount of water that covers an area.
a. drought b. fire c. flood d. blood
15.means making cloth, a carpet, a basket etc by crossing threads.
a. Waving b. Weaving c. Cycling d. Recycling
16.means part of the traditions of a country or group of people.
a. Habitat b. Traditional c. Solar d. Lunar

17.are people whose job is to weave cloth.

- a. Thieves b. Pilots c. Scientists d. Weavers

18. A.....is a machine on which thread is woven into cloth.

- a. loom b. trumpet c. knife d. room

19. Long thin string of cotton, silk used to sew or weave cloth means.....

- a. treat b. deal c. threat d. thread

20.means cloth used for making clothes.

- a. Barbecue b. Fabric c. Statue d. Leather

21.means a coloured liquid used for writing or printing.

- a. Gas b. Coal c. Ink d. Sheets

22. A.....is a small container that has ink inside.

- a. trunk b. bank c. carriage d. cartridge

Synonyms & Antonyms

المرادفات والمتضادات

word	synonym	antonym	المعنى
protect	save	damage	يحمي - يدمر
absorb	take in	give out	يمتص - يخرج
start	begin	finish	يبدأ - ينهي
agree	accept	refuse	يقبل - يرفض
let	allow	prevent	يسمح - يمنع
ask	inquire	answer / reply	يسأل - يجيب
traditional	old	new / modern	تقليدي - جديد
attractive	beautiful	ugly	جذاب - قبيح
familiar	known	unfamiliar	مألوف - غير مألوف
disappear	vanish	appear	يختفي - يظهر

Prefixes

prefix	المعنى	Prefix	المعنى
renewable	متجدد	unkind	غير طيب
nonrenewable	غير متجدد	unfamiliar	غير مألوف
recycle	يعيد استخدام	disappear	يختفي
recycling	اعادة استخدام	impossible	مستحيل
disadvantages	عيوب	irregular	غير منتظم

Suffixes

Suffix	المعنى	Suffix	المعنى
changeable	متغير	colourful	ملون
happiness	السعادة	weaver	نساج
useless	بلا فائدة	attractive	جذاب
traditional	تقليدي	beautiful	جميل
helpful	متعاون	environmental	بيئي

اختياري على Suffixes, prefixes, synonyms & antonyms

1. The antonym of "renewable" is.....

- a. new b. modern c. nonrenewable d. renewal

2.is the same as "take in" .

- a. Upload b. Download c. Absorb d. Disturb

3. The prefix "....." means use again.

- a. re b. ir c. il d. dis

4. The suffix "....." gives the opposite of "useful".

- a. ness b. ship c. less d. il

5. The.....of "let" is "allow".

- a. synonym b. opposite c. antonym d. unlike

6. We form the name from "weave" we add the suffix.....

- a. ing b. less c. ful d. un

7. Impossible and possible are.....

- a. equal b. synonyms c. antonyms d. same

8. Known is the synonym of.....

- a. disappear b. unfamiliar c. familiar d. unknown

اختياري على استنتاج المعنى

9. Paper can be reused again. "Reused" means.....

- a. removed b. burnt c. recycled d. travelled

10. Recycling is great for the environment. This means it is.....

- a. useless b. bad c. good d. terrible

11. We asked our teacher to start a project and he said yes. This means he.....

- a. refused b. disagreed c. agreed d. laughed

12. This form of energy is sustainable. We can use it again. This means it is.....

- a. vanish b. end c. nonrenewable d. renewable

تمارين كتاب Student's Book & Workbook

1. Forest fires are increasing because our.....is getting hotter.

- a. plate b. plane c. plan d. planet

2. It is bad to put rubbish in sites because methane is produced.

- a. landmark b. landscape c. landfill d. waterfall

3. Trees keep the air clean by.....carbon dioxide.
a. melting b. absorbing c. breathing out d. giving
4. Climate change will get worse if we burn fossil.....
a. fuels b. shapes c. fans d. marks
5. Solar energy and wind power are types of.....energy.
a. nonrenewable b. renewable c. ancient d. formal
6.warming is a serious problem.
a. Global b. Cleaning c. Polar d. Solar
7. Do you know that some plants.....pollution from the air?
a. sort b. fort c. absorb d. export
8. Egypt is usually sunny, so it is a great place to use.....energy.
a. fuel b. hydroelectric c. solar d. lunar
9. Wind and waves are two fantastic forms of.....energy.
a. renewable b. nonrenewable c. solar d. space
10. Climate.....increases when we cut down trees.
a. exchange b. charge c. share d. change

ملخص جرامر الوحدة (8) في نقاط

حالة الشرط الأولي The First conditional

١ - الحالة الأولى تعبر عن التوقع او الاحتمال في المستقبل والوعد والتهديد وتتكون كالآتي :-

مصدر + will / won't + فاعل, (مضارع بسيط) If / When...present simple

If people **collect** their rubbish, we **will pay** for them.
If he **studies** hard, he **will get** high marks.

٢ - يمكن أن تأتي (if) في أول الجملة أو وسط الجملة

If he arrives early, he will catch the train.
He will catch the train **if** he arrives early.

٣ - في حالة السؤال بمعنى هل يكون الشكل كالآتي

.....? مضارع بسيط + فاعل + if + مصدر + فاعل + Will

Will she cook food **if** he helps her?
Yes, she will.
No, she won't.

٤ - في حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام يكون الشكل كالاتي

..? مضارع بسيط + فاعل + if + مصدر + فاعل + will + كلمة استفهام

What will you buy **if** you get the first prize?

I will buy a mobile if I get the first prize.

Where will he travel **if** he has a holiday?

He will travel to England if he has a holiday.

٥ - انتبة جيدا

١ - يمكن استخدام (should - must - can - may) بدلاً من (will)

٢ - يمكن أن يكون جواب الشرط صيغة أمر إذا لم تبدأ الجملة الثانية بفاعل

٣ - يمكن استخدام (Should) بدلاً من (If) في أول الجملة ويأتي بعدها فاعل ثم مصدر بدون أي اضافات

Exercises on language

Complete the following sentences with the correct form

- Our environment will be cleaner if we.....(**recycled**) rubbish.
- If our seas.....(**becoming**) warmer, coral reefs will die.
- If we burn rubbish, we.....(**would**) pollute the air.
- Climate change will get worse if we.....(**doesn't**) take more actions.
- We will save water only.....(**who**) we take short showers.
-(**Do**) Dina speak English if her parents move to Canada?
- How will Tarek.....(**feels**) if he goes to bed late?
- If you keep eating sweets, you will.....(**has**) bad teeth.
- What will you do if you.....(**aren't**) catch the train?
- Ahmed.....(**don't**) come to school tomorrow if he feels ill.

Verbs + (to + inf) or (v+ ing)

١ - يوجد أفعال يأتي بعدها (مصدر + to)

arrange	يرتب	help	يساعد
plan	يخطط	intend	ينوي
ask	يسأل - يطلب	hope	يتمنى
decide	يقرر	expect	يتوقع
refuse	يرفض	want	يريد

offer	يعرض	need	يحتاج
promise	يوعد	learn	يتعلم
choose	يختار	wish	يتمنى

1. He **learned** to drive a car.
2. She **refused** to take the money
3. They **promised** to help me.
4. They **needed** to buy some bread.

٢ - يوجد بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها (V + ing)

avoid	يتجنب	feel like	يرغب
mind	يمنع	practise	يمارس
go	يذهب	suggest	يقترح
dislike	يكره	keep	يحافظ على
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	miss	يفوتة

1. He **suggested** playing computer games.
2. I don't **mind** having tea with coffee.
3. We must **avoid** polluting the environment.

انتبه جيداً

١ - يوجد بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها إما (مصدر + to) أو (V+ ing) والمعنى يختلف تماماً مثل

stop - remember

He **stopped eating** fast food because it was unhealthy. (توقف عن فعل الشيء)

He **stopped to eat** fast food because he was hungry. (توقف لكي يفعل الشيء)

٢ - تعبيرات عامة يأتي بعدها (ing)

look forward to	يتطلع الى	addicted to	مدمن على
in addition to	بالإضافة الى	as well as	بالإضافة الى

I am **looking forward to** visiting Aswan.

In addition to watching TV, he played football.

٣ - إذا جاءت كلمة (would) قبل (love - like - prefer) فيأتي بعدهم (مصدر + to)

I **prefer** having some tea.

I'd **prefer** to have some tea.

Expressing reason & contrast السبب والتناقض

because, this is because, However, nevertheless

١ - للتعبير عن السبب نستخدم الروابط الآتية

1. because = this is because = as = since بمعنى لأن ويأتي بعدها جملة كاملة أي فاعل ثم فعل

He came first **because** he studied hard.
He came first **this is because** he studied hard.
They won **because** they played well.
They won **this is because** they played well.

2. because of ... ويسبب / V + ing ويأتي بعدها اسم..... بسبب

He came first **because of** studying hard.
They won **because of** playing well.

٢ - للتعبير عن النتيجة نستخدم الروابط الآتية

1. so = that's why = as a result لذلك ويأتي بعدهم جملة كاملة

He arrived early, **so** he caught the bus.
He arrived early **that's why** he caught the bus.
He arrived early **as a result** he caught the bus.

٣ - للتعبير عن التناقض نستخدم الروابط الآتية

1. **Although**..... بالرغم من

..... **although**.....

2., **but**..... ولكن

3., **However**, مع ذلك

4., **Nevertheless**, ومع ذلك / ولكن

Although they played well, they lost.
They lost **although** they played well.
They played well, **but** they lost.
They played well. **However**, they lost.
They played well. **Nevertheless**, they lost.

Complete the following sentences with the correct form

1. There is no bread, so we need.....(**go**) to the baker's.
2. The exam is next month, so I have planned.....(**revise**) well.
3. I have to avoid.....(**to eat**) nuts.
4. To get to the bank, keep.....(**walk**) down this road.
5. Mona has decided.....(**learns**) Japanese.
6. Tarek enjoy.....(**listen**) to music.
7. We decided.....(**buying**) a new house.
8. He enjoys.....(**to write**) short stories.
9. She suggested.....(**to swim**) in the sea.
10. Would you like.....(**playing**) football?
11. He stopped.....(**to drink**) tea because it is bad for health.
12. One of the reasons we are having more floods is.....(**because of**) the ice is melting.
13. Rainforests are important.....(**However**) their trees absorb pollution.
14. He studied hard. That's.....(**because**) he got high marks.

تمارين على أسئلة المهارات وموضوعات الكتابة1. Finish the following dialogue

Mazin and Soha are discussing the forms of energy

- Mazin** : Do you know that There are two forms of energy?
Soha : Really. (1).....?
Mazin : Renewable and nonrenewable energy.
Soha : What are the nonrenewable forms?
Mazin : (2).....
Soha : Is solar energy nonrenewable?
Mazin : (3).....
Soha : From where can we get solar energy?
Mazin : (4).....
Soha : I think renewable energy is green.
Mazin : (5).....

2. Read and complete the text with words from the list (4 M)

side - sites - recycling - burn - burning - renewable

If we keep (1).....fossil fuels, climate change will get worse. So, we need to use cleaner (2).....energy such as solar energy and wind power. We must start (3).....more rubbish and stop putting rubbish in landfill (4)..... If we recycle more paper, we can avoid cutting down our forests.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions (6 M)

Tourists have come to Egypt for hundreds of years to see the wonders of the ancient world such as the pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful experience for them. Tourists have also come to experience the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

There are a lot of activities to do by the Red Sea. Some people love relaxing on the beach, while others like doing something more exciting like snorkelling. Snorkelling has been popular for many years and people have come to Egypt to swim in the Red Sea for a long time. Dahab has been a popular destination since 1960. This is because the water in Dahab is among the best in the world for snorkelling. There are beautiful coral reefs and there are some amazing sea animals, such as the dugong and the lionfish. We have to encourage and welcome tourists to visit Egypt in the future.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1..... are activities that people can do by the Red Sea.

- a. The pyramids, temples and other monuments.
- b. Wonderful natural world.
- c. Relaxing on the beach and snorkelling.
- d. The Red Sea and Dahab.

2. Dahab has become a popular destination since.....

- a. 1936
- b. 1960
- c. 1906
- d. 1926

3. The main idea of the passage is.....

- a. When do tourists visit Egypt?
- b. Coral reefs
- c. Sea animals
- d. Why do tourists come to Egypt?

b. Answer the following questions

4. What are the examples of the natural world in the text?

5. Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines?

6. Do you think that more tourists will visit Egypt in the future?

أهم موضوعات الكتابة في الوحدة الـ (8)

طريقة كتابة الـ **Review** عن الأشياء التي يمكن إعادة تدويرها

- ١ نتحدث عن أهمية إعادة التدوير
- ٢ - نتحدث عن الأشياء التي يمكن إعادة تدوير
- ٣ - نتحدث عن كل عنصر وفائدة تدويره
- ٤ - نختم بجزئية هل التدوير مفيد للبيئة أم لا؟

Write about (110) words on

"A review of things we can recycle"

الأشياء التي يمكن إعادة تدويرها

Recycling things has become one of the most important things these days. We should start recycling because it is a good way to help our planet. There are many things we can recycle. We can recycle paper, plastic, water and other things. If we recycle paper, we will avoid cutting more trees. This will help to reduce pollution. We can recycle water to use it again for growing plants and washing cars. Plastic objects can be recycled. We can use the recycled plastic again for making many things such as bags and bottles. We can recycle cotton and wool to make clothes. To conclude, recycling is very important for both people and the environment.

أصبحت إعادة تدوير الأشياء من أهم الأشياء هذه الأيام. يجب أن نبدأ في إعادة التدوير لأنها طريقة جيدة لمساعدة كوكبنا. هناك أشياء كثيرة يمكننا إعادة تدويرها. يمكننا إعادة تدوير الورق والبلاستيك والماء وأشياء أخرى. إذا قمنا بإعادة تدوير الورق ، فسوف نتجنب قطع المزيد من الأشجار. هذا سوف يساعد على تقليل التلوث. يمكننا إعادة تدوير المياه لاستخدامها مرة أخرى في زراعة النباتات وغسيل السيارات. يمكن إعادة تدوير الأشياء البلاستيكية. يمكننا استخدام البلاستيك المعاد تدويره مرة أخرى لصنع أشياء كثيرة مثل الأكياس والزجاجات. يمكننا إعادة تدوير القطن والصوف لصنع الملابس. في الختام ، إعادة التدوير مهمة جداً لكل من الناس والبيئة.

طريقة كتابة الـ Review عن أنواع وأشكال الطاقة المتجددة

١ - نتحدث عن أهمية الطاقة المتجددة

٢ - أنواع الطاقة المتجددة

٣ - نتحدث عن مصدر كل طاقة

٤ - هل هي مفيدة للبيئة أم لا؟

Write about (110) words on

"Forms of renewable energy"

أنواع الطاقة المتجددة

Renewable energy is the best form of energy that we use these days. It is good for the environment. There are many forms of renewable energy. They are solar energy, wind power and hydroelectric. The energy from the sun is called solar energy. The wind can be used to make electricity. We use wind turbines to make electricity. We can use water to make electricity. This form is called hydroelectric. We must use these forms of energy instead of fossil fuels for many reasons. They are green. They are cheap and continue for a long time. I mean they are reusable. All countries now have started using all these form of energy.

الطاقة المتجددة هي أفضل شكل من أشكال الطاقة التي نستخدمها هذه الأيام. إنها جيدة للبيئة. هناك العديد من أشكال الطاقة المتجددة. هم الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح والطاقة الكهرومائية. الطاقة من الشمس تسمى الطاقة الشمسية. يمكن استخدام الرياح لتوليد الكهرباء. نستخدم توربينات الرياح لتوليد الكهرباء. يمكننا استخدام الماء لتوليد الكهرباء. هذا النموذج يسمى الكهرومائية. يجب أن نستخدم هذه الأشكال من الطاقة بدلاً من الوقود الحفري لأسباب عديدة. انهم صديقة للبيئة. إنها رخيصة وتستمر لفترة طويلة. أعني أنها قابلة لإعادة الاستخدام. بدأت جميع الدول الآن في استخدام كل هذه الأشكال من الطاقة.

Unit (9)

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الرئيسية

sustainable	دائم - صديق للبيئة	battery	بطارية
products	منتجات	energy-saving	موفر للطاقة
seedlings	شتلات	light bulb	مصباح كهربى
rechargeable	قابل للشحن	footprint	اثر الاقدام
enormous	ضخم	promise	يوعد
destroy	يدمر	remote	بعيد
power	قوة	sustainable	دائم - صديق للبيئة
produce	ينتج	frightened	مرعوب - خائف
region	منطقة	landscape	منظر طبيعي
initiative	مبادرة	desertification	التصحّر
seedling	شتلة	creating	تكوين / خلق
sustainable	صديق للبيئة / دائم	energy - saving	موفر للطاقة
drought	الجفاف	improve	يحسن
air conditioning	التكييف	solar panels	ألواح شمسية

Definitions أهم التعريفات

seedling	شتلة	a young plant or tree grown from a seed
crops	محاصيل	plants such as wheat, rice, or fruit that are grown by farmers
mangrove	مانجروف	a tropical tree that grows in or near water
sustainable	صديق للبيئة	able to continue without causing damage to the environment
light bulb	مصباح	the glass object inside a lamp that produces light
enormous	ضخم	very big in size or in amount
destroy	يدمر	to damage something so badly
power	قوة	the ability or right to control people or events
produce	ينتج	to create or make
promise	يوعد	to say that you will do something
remote	بعيد	not near, far away
sustainable	صديق للبيئة	good for the environment or continuous
frightened	خائف	feeling afraid

region	منطقة	a large area of a country or of the world
desertification	التصحّر	when farm land changes into desert
landscape	منظر طبيعي	a view showing an area of land
creating	تكوين / خلق	making or producing
farming	الزراعة	growing crops or keeping animals on a farm
improve	يحسن	to make something better, or to become better
initiative	مبادرة	an important plan to achieve an aim or solve problems

اختياري على التعريفات

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. A.....is a young plant or tree grown from a seed.

- a. trunks b. crops c. seedling d. seeds

2.are plants such as wheat, rice, or fruit that are grown by farmers.

- a. Groups b. Fuels c. Crops d. Jobs

3. A.....is a tropical tree that grows in or near water.

- a. palm b. mangrove c. prove d. rose

4.means able to continue without causing damage to the environment.

- a. Nonrenewable b. Sustainable c. Funny d. Free

5. A..... bulb is the glass object inside a lamp that produces light.

- a. night b. bite c. site d. light

6.means very big in size or in amount

- a. Small b. Tiny c. Enormous d. Thin

7. To damage something so badly means.....

- a. enjoy b. save c. rescue d. destroy

8.is the ability or right to control people or events.

- a. Flower b. Fire c. Flood d. Power

9.is to create or make.

- a. Introduce b. Produce c. Fuel d. Kill

10.means to say that you will do something

- a. Promise b. Damage c. Forget d. Reject

11.means not near, far away.

- a. Close b. Remote c. Silly d. Clear

12. Good for the environment or continuous means.....

- a. nonrenewable b. sustainable c. harmful d. end

13.means feeling afraid.

- a. Kind b. Brave c. Frightened d. Famous

14. An.....is an important plan to achieve an aim or solve problems.

- a. solution b. suggestion c. initiative d. thought

15.means making or producing.

- a. Dying b. Disappearing c. Creating d. Throwing

16. A.....is a view showing an area of land.

- a. landscape b. landfill c. plate d. area

17. A large area of a country or of the world is a.....

- a. region b. season c. reason d. result

18.means growing crops or keeping animals on a farm.

- a. Recycling b. Forming c. Farming d. Harming

19. To make something better, or to become better means.....

- a. disprove b. approve c. remove d. improve

20.is when farm land changes into desert.

- a. Desertification b. Civilization c. Globalization d. Infection

Synonyms & Antonyms

word	synonym	antonym	المعنى
grow	plant	harvest	يزرع - يحصد
live	survive	die	يعيش - يموت
protect	save	damage	يحمي - يدمر
rise	go up	fall	يرتفع - ينخفض
cheap	inexpensive	expensive	رخيص - غالي
reduce	decrease	increase	يقلل - يزيد
enormous	huge	small - tiny	ضخم - صغير
grow	plant	harvest	يزرع - يحصد
finish	end	start	ينتهي - يبدأ
reduce	decrease	increase	يقلل - يزود

Prefixes

prefix	المعنى	Prefix	المعنى
infamous	غير مشهور	inexpensive	رخيص
unfriendly	غير ودود	rechargeable	قابل للشحن
dislike	يكره	reusable	يستخدم مره اخري
inactive	غير نشيط	unimportant	غير مهم

Suffixes

Suffix	المعنى	Suffix	المعنى
coastal	ساحلي	renewable	متجدد
useful	مفيد	amazing	مذهل
quickly	بسرعه	sadness	الحزن
farming	الزراعة	pollution	التلوث

اختياري على Suffixes, prefixes, synonyms & antonyms

- "Sustainable" and "nonrenewable" are.....
a. equal b. synonyms c. antonyms d. similar
- We add the prefix "....." to give the opposite of "like".
a. dis b. ness c. ly d. ily
- To form the adjective from "coast" we add the suffix ".....".
a. al b. ly c. il d. dis
- Very big is the.....of enormous.
a. synonym b. opposite c. antonym d. different
- To give the opposite of "expensive" we add the prefix ".....".
a. im b. in c. dis d. miss
- We get theof "amaze" by adding the suffix "ing".
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective
- "Reduce" and "increase" are
a. similar b. synonyms c. antonyms d. the same
- We add the prefix "....." to get the opposite of "active".
a. in b. im c. dis d. il
- "Lose" is the opposite of.....
a. miss b. win c. fail d. fill
- We couldn't cross the river. The word "cross" here is a.....
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb

اختياري على استنتاج المعنى

- We can raise.....
a. hands b. money c. animals d. A, B & C
- Farmers always keep animals on their farms. The word "keep" means.....
a. kill b. sell c. buy d. raise
- I saw a girl with blue eyes. The word "with" here means sheblue eyes.
a. had b. wears c. sold d. touched
- My father stopped smoking. This means he.....smoking.
a. started b. began c. gave up d. took
- Sometimes I get very cross with my children. The word "cross" here means.....
a. happy b. angry c. kind d. pleased
- Some products are sustainable. This means they.....
a. are continuous b. cause no damage c. nonrenewable d. A & B

تمارين كتاب Student's Book & Workbook

-trees grow in seawater along the coast.
a. Mangrove b. Palm c. Grapes d. Olive
- There are more floods in many countries because of rising sea.....
a. leaves b. beefs c. rocks d. levels
-are small young plants.
a. Sleeves b. Seedlings c. Shapes d. Blocks

4. Rice and vegetables are.....that we grow on farms.
a. fruits b. floods c. meal d. crops
5. We can't continue to use petrol for cars because it is not.....
a. sustainable b. fossil c. useless d. funny
6. We can use that bag again. It is.....
a. remarkable b. nonrenewable c. reusable d. silly
7. This cup is made from a tall plant called a.....
a. fig b. bamboo c. shampoo d. mango
8. We should build a.....world where there is less pollution.
a. greener b. polluted c. dirty d. noisy
9. The elephant is really..... It's about three tons.
a. small b. tiny c. enormous d. smell
10. The truck.....the car totally It was a horrible accident.
a. destroyed b. helped c. saved d. rescued
11. The story was about a super hero who had special.....He could carry a heavy car.
a. name b. meal c. powers d. flowers
12. Factories.....a lot of pollution. They should try to reduce it.
a. produce b. absorb c. import d. examine
13. My little brother.....not to play football in the house.
a. objected b. recommended c. suggested d. promised

Grammar

حالة الشرط الثانية The second conditional

١ - نستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن الاستحالة والتمنى في المضارع وتكون كالآتي

مصدر + would / wouldn't + فاعل, (ماضي بسيط) If ...past simple

If you **played** well, you **would** win.

If there **were** more mangrove trees, there **would be** fewer floods.

If he **didn't study** hard, he **wouldn't get** high marks.

٢ - يمكن أن تأتي (if) في أول الجملة أو وسط الجملة

If he **arrived** early, he **would catch** the train.

He **would catch** the train if he **arrived** early.

٣ - يمكن استخدام الشكل الآتي لاعطاء النصيحة

مصدر + would / wouldn't + If I were you,

If I **were** you, I **would study** hard. (You **should**)

If I **were** you, I **wouldn't arrive** late. (You **shouldn't**)

٤ - في الحالة الثانية تأتي (were) بمعنى يكون ويمكن استخدامها مع كل الضمائر أما (had) تأتي بمعنى عنده أو يملك

If I **were** rich, I **would help** the poor. (يكون)

If I **had** money, I **would help** the poor. (عنده - يملك)

٣ - في حالة السؤال بمعنى هل يكون الشكل كالآتي

.....? ماضي بسيط + فاعل + if + مصدر + فاعل + Would

Would you buy the book if you had enough money?

Yes, I would.

No, I wouldn't.

٤ - في حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام يكون الشكل كالآتي

...? ماضي بسيط + فاعل + if + مصدر + فاعل + would + كلمة استفهام

Where could he travel if he were rich?

He could travel to England if he were rich.

معلومات إضافية

١ - يمكن استخدام (could) بدلا من (would) في الحالة الثانية

٢ - يمكن استخدام (Should) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الثانية أيضاً ويأتي بعدها فاعل ثم مصدر بدون اضافات

٣ - يمكن في الحالة الثانية استخدام (were) بمعنى يكون و (had) بمعنى عنده أو يملك

Exercises on language

Complete the following sentences with the correct form

1. If we lived in Hurghada, we.....(will) go to the beach every week.
2. Those farmers would move to a safer place if there..... (are) another flood.
3. If we..... (have) more time, we would visit our cousins in the village.
4. We..... (will have) fewer storms if climate change stopped.
5. If we used greener energy, we would..... (produced) less pollution.
6. More land..... (become) desert if there were more droughts.
7. Would you buy solar panels for your house if you.....(have) enough money?
8. We would build a solar farm for our community if we..... (can buy) the land.
9. If the school..... (build) a wind turbine, it could make its own electricity.
10. If you wanted to do a green initiative, what would it.....(been)?
11. If we had more money, we.....(can) buy that phone.
12. What.....(will) you do if you got a new job?
13. Tarek would pass the test if he.....(studies) harder.
14. What clothes would you wear if you.....(live) in a cold country?
15. If there.....(are) more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.

التعبير عن عادة في الماضي used to + inf

١ - للتعبير عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي ولا تحدث الآن نستخدم

..... مصدر + used to + فاعل

We **used to** get all our shopping in plastic bags.
She **used to** be lazy, but now she isn't.

٢ - في حالة النفي نستخدم الشكل الاتي

.... مصدر + use to + didn't + فاعل

We **didn't use to** use the metro, but we do now.
They **didn't use to** get energy from the sun.

٣ - في حالة السؤال بمعنى (هل) يكون السؤال كالآتي

Did + فاعل + use to + مصدر.....?

Did you **use to** play football?
Did they **use to** help the poor?

٤ - في حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام يكون السؤال كالآتي

.....? مصدر + use to + فاعل + did + كلمة استفهام

What did you use to do?
I used to swim in the sea.

Exercises on language

Complete the following sentences with the correct form

1. In the past people didn't use to.....(**used**) energy - saving bulbs.
2. We..... (**waste**) water, but now we try to save water.
3. I..... (**have**) an electric toothbrush, but now I've got one.
4. Mum.....(**get**) plastic bags at the supermarket, but now she gets paper ones.
5. Dad..... (**turn off**) his computer at night, but he does now.
6. My grandparents.....(**use**) to live on a farm.

1. Finish the following dialogue

Khaled has read the story of the Iron Woman

Yossif : Have you read the "Iron Woman"?

Khaled : (1).....

Yossif : (2).....?

Khaled : She was enormous with big red eyes.

Yossif : (3).....?

Khaled : She came to the factory to destroy it.

Yossif : Did she really destroy it?

Khaled : (4).....

Yossif : What is the moral of the story?

Khaled : (5).....

2. Read and complete the text with words from the list (4 M)

control - sustainable - rechargeable - get - getting - trainable

I always used to (1).....the newest phone. I have stopped doing that now because it isn't(2).....Now I use (3).....batteries for the TV remote (4).....and my computer mouse.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions (6 M)

A students and his professor saw a pair of old shoes lying in the path. It belonged to a poor man who worked in a field nearby. The student wanted to play a trick on him, but the professor refused. They agreed on putting a coin into each shoe and hide themselves to watch how that would affect the poor man. The man soon came to the place where he had put his shoes. While slipping his foot into one of his shoes, he felt the coin. The man put it into his pocket. When he proceeded to put on the other shoe, he found the other coin. His feelings overcame him and he jumped over with joy thanking God. The man spoke of his sick wife and his hungry children. The student was deeply affected and his eyes filled with tears. “Now, said the professor,” isn’t it much better than playing your trick? “the student said that his professor had taught him a lesson to remember.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. The lesson behind this passage is to

a. play a trick on the poor

b. put a coin in each shoe

c. speak of your sick wife

d. try to help poor people

2. owned the old shoes.

a. The student

b. The professor

c. The poor man

d. The rich man

3. When the poor man found the two coins he was

a. sad

b. pleased

c. angry

d. unhappy

b. Answer the following questions

1. Did the student play the trick?

2. Why did the professor refuse to play a trick on the man?

3. What do you think the poor man will do with the money?

أهم موضوعات الكتابة في الوحدة الـ (9)

طريقة كتابة الـ Review عن المبادرة الخضراء

١ - ماهي المبادرة الخضراء

٢ - أين توجد

٣ - هدف المبادرة الخضراء

٣ - نتائج المبادرة الخضراء

Write about (110) words on

"A review of a green initiative"

مبادرة خضراء

There is a green initiative in Africa called the Great Green Wall. This initiative started in 2007 by the African Union. The aim of the initiative is to solve the problem of deforestation. The Great Green Wall initiative will plant millions of trees, seedlings and plants across Africa from east to west. This will create a growing green landscape. When they finish planting the trees, the wall will be 8.000 km long. The initiative will have a lot of good results. It will create jobs for people. It will help farmers grow more crops. In addition to that, it will also help to reduce the problems of climate change.

هناك مبادرة خضراء في إفريقيا تسمى الجدار الأخضر العظيم. بدأت هذه المبادرة في عام ٢٠٠٧ من قبل الاتحاد الأفريقي. الهدف من المبادرة هو حل مشكلة إزالة الغابات. ستعمل مبادرة السور الأخضر العظيم على زراعة ملايين الأشجار والشتلات والنباتات في جميع أنحاء إفريقيا من الشرق إلى الغرب. سيؤدي هذا إلى إنشاء المناظر الطبيعية الخضراء المتنامية. عند الانتهاء من زراعة الأشجار ، سيبلغ طول الجدار ٨,٠٠٠ كم. ستحقق المبادرة الكثير من النتائج الجيدة. سيخلق وظائف للناس. سيساعد المزارعين على زراعة المزيد من المحاصيل. بالإضافة إلى ذلك ، فإنه سيساعد أيضاً في الحد من مشاكل تغير المناخ.

طريقة كتابة الـ **Review** عن "تقليل الاحتباس الحراري"

١ - نتحدث عن أن الاحتباس الحراري أصبح مشكلة كبيرة

٢ - تأثير الاحتباس الحراري

٣ - الخطوات التي يجب أن نفعّلها لحل هذه المشكلة

٤ - اقتراح حلول إضافية لحل المشكلة

"How to reduce global warming"

كيفية تقليل الاحتباس الحراري

Global warming is one of the most dangerous problems that all countries around the world have. It affects all countries and all habitats. We should do our best to find solutions to this problem. There are a lot of things we can do. Firstly, we should plant more trees. Trees help to increase oxygen and reduce pollution. Secondly, we should recycle rubbish instead of putting it in landfill sites. If we do that, there will be fewer gases. Thirdly, we should reduce our use of fossil fuels such as oil and gas. They cause much pollution. We should start using renewable sources of energy. They are clean and don't pollute the environment.

يعتبر الاحتباس الحراري من أخطر المشاكل التي تواجهها جميع دول العالم. إنه يؤثر على جميع البلدان وجميع البيئات. يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لإيجاد حلول لهذه المشكلة. هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكننا القيام بها. أولاً، يجب أن نزرع المزيد من الأشجار. تساعد الأشجار على زيادة الأكسجين وتقليل التلوث. ثانياً، يجب إعادة تدوير القمامة بدلاً من وضعها في أماكن القاء النفايات. إذا فعلنا ذلك، فسيكون هناك عدد أقل من الغازات. ثالثاً، يجب تقليل استخدامنا للوقود الحفري مثل البنزين والغاز. لأنها تسبب الكثير من التلوث. يجب أن نبدأ في استخدام مصادر الطاقة المتجددة. إنها نظيفة ولا تلوث البيئة.

"A review of climate change"

التغير المناخي

Climate change is one of the worst problems that we face. All countries around the world suffer from this problem. There are many reasons for climate change. The main reason is pollution. Pollution produce gases that make the temperature of the earth get higher and higher. Another reason is cutting down trees. Although it is a dangerous problem, it is easy to solve it. We should reduce the amount of pollution. We should stop using fossil fuels. We should use renewable sources of energy that don't cause pollution. We must stop deforestation. We should plant more trees along streets. If we do that, we will solve this problem easily.

تغير المناخ من أسوأ المشاكل التي نواجهها. جميع دول العالم تعاني من هذه المشكلة. هناك أسباب عديدة لتغير المناخ. السبب الرئيسي هو التلوث. ينتج التلوث غازات تجعل درجة حرارة الأرض تزيد أكثر وأكثر. سبب آخر هو قطع الأشجار. على الرغم من أنها مشكلة خطيرة، إلا أنه من السهل حلها. يجب أن نحد من كمية التلوث. يجب أن نتوقف عن استخدام الوقود الأحفوري. يجب أن نستخدم مصادر الطاقة المتجددة التي لا تسبب التلوث. يجب أن نوقف إزالة الغابات. يجب أن نزرع المزيد من الأشجار على طول الشوارع. إذا فعلنا ذلك، فسنحل هذه المشكلة بسهولة.

Unit (10)

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الرئيسية

toiler	كادح / مجد في عملة	weather	الطقس
planetarium	قبة سماوية	galaxy	مجرة
exhibition	معرض	space probe	مسبار فضائي
land	أرض - يهبط	spacecraft	سفينة فضاء
international	دولي	astronauts	رواد الفضاء
telescope	تلسكوب	satellite	قمر صناعي
international	دولي	station	محطة
astronomer	عالم فلك	events	أحداث
lenses	عدسات	astronaut	رائد فضاء
century	قرن	satellite	قمر صناعي
GPS	نظام تحديد المواقع	technology	تكنولوجيا
system	نظام	fellow	رفيق

Definitions أهم التعريفات

astronaut	رائد فضاء	a person who travels into space
researcher	باحث	a person who studies something carefully
satellite	قمر صناعي	a machine in space that goes round the Earth
gravity	الجاذبية	the force that attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth
space station	محطة فضاء	a large spacecraft where people live and work
telescope	تلسكوب	a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away
orbit	يدور حول	go round
voyage	رحلة بحرية فضائية	a long journey in a ship or spacecraft
toiler	كادح	someone who is working hard
in vain	بلا فائدة	unsuccessful or useless
continent	قارة	Large areas such as Africa and Asia
grain	غلة	a seed or seeds from a plant such as wheat
fellow	رفيق	another word for a man
lens	عدسة	a piece of glass used in cameras or glasses to make things look bigger

sensor	جهاز استشعار	something which can measure small amounts of light, heat, sound, etc.
wireless	لاسلكي	able to use the internet without wires
asteroid	كويكب	one of the many small planets that move around the sun
galaxy	مجرة	a large group of stars
planetarium	قبة سماوية	a building where lights show the movements of planets and stars
ancient	قديم	belonging to a time long ago in history
amazing	مذهل	very good or surprising
explore	يستكشف	to travel around an area in order to find out about it

اختياري على التعريفات

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. An.....is a person who travels into space.

a. astrologer b. astronaut c. scientist d. astrologer

2. A.....is a person who studies something carefully.

a. search b. charger c. scientists d. researcher

3. A.....is a machine in space that goes round the Earth.

a. satellite b. dish c. storm d. star

4. The force that attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth is.....

a. graffiti b. gravity c. hate d. recycling

5. A.....station is a large spacecraft where people live and work.

a. space b. speed c. spoke d. sport

6. A.....is a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away.

a. microscope b. funnel c. telescope d. oven

7.means go round something.

a. Swim b. Dive c. Serve d. Orbit

8. A.....is a long journey in a ship or spacecraft.

a. trip b. picnic c. voyage d. wander

9. A.....is someone who is working hard.

a. engineer b. toiler c. astronaut d. follow

10.means unsuccessful or useless.

a. Important b. Useful c. Valuable d. In vain

11. A.....is a large area such as Africa and Asia.

a. control b. content c. continent d. contain

12.means a seed or seeds from a plant such as wheat.

a. Grade b. Great c. Grain d. Group

13. A.....is another word for a man.

a. fellow b. woman c. female d. crew

14. A.....is a piece of glass used in cameras or glasses to make things look bigger.

a. sense b. prince c. sense d. sail

15. A.....is something which can measure small amounts of light, heat, sound, etc .

- a. sensor b. editor c. email d. sailor

16. Able to use the internet without wires means.....

- a. firewall b. fireless c. wireless d. homeless

17. An.....is one of the many small planets that move around the sun.

- a. star b. planet c. satellite d. asteroid

18. Extremely large in size, amount, or degree means.....

- a. small b. tiny c. huge d. silly

19. A.....is a building where lights show the movements of planets and stars

- a. planetarium b. funfair c. attic d. tomb

20. Belonging to a time long ago in history means.....

- a. modern b. new c. advanced d. ancient

21.means very good or surprising.

- a. Silly b. Amazing c. Boring d. Lazy

22.is to travel around an area in order to find out about it.

- a. Explore b. Explode c. Expect d. Accept

23. A large group of stars means a.....

- a. planet b. continent c. galaxy d. universes

Synonyms & Antonyms

المرادفات والمتضادات

word	synonym	antonym	المعنى
understand	see	misunderstand	يفهم / يفسد الفهم
real	true	untrue	حقيقي / غير حقيقي
important	essential	useless	مهم / بلا فائدة
live	survive	die	يعيش - يموت
many	a lot of	few	كثير - قليل
allow	let	stop - prevent	يسمح - يمنع
huge	enormous	small	ضخم - صغير
above	over	under - below	فوق - تحت
difficult	hard	easy	صعب - سهل

Prefixes

prefix	المعنى	Prefix	المعنى
unpolluted	غير ملوث	reuse	يعيد استخدام
impossible	مستحيل	bicycle	دراجة
dislike	يكره	bilingual	ثنائي اللغة

Suffixes

Suffix	المعنى	Suffix	المعنى
interesting	شيق	invention	اختراع
researcher	باحث	receiver	جهاز استقبال
useful	مفيد	national	قومي

اختياري على Suffixes, prefixes, synonyms & antonyms

- The antonym of "dead" is.....
a. die b. death c. life d. alive
- We form the noun from "research" by adding the suffix"....."
a. or b. er c. est d. ed
- The prefix "multi" means.....
a. little b. few c. funny d. many
- They are happy. We can form the opposite by adding.....
a. in b. im c. un d. dis
- We form the adjective from "wire" by adding the suffix.....
a. ly b. less c. ness d. ion
- the opposite of possible is.....
a. impossible b. useful c. important d. funny
- We add the prefix "....." to get the opposite of successful.
a. im b. il c. ir d. un
- "Huge" and "small" are.....
a. synonyms b. similar c. antonyms d. same
- The synonyms of "hard" is.....
a. difficult b. easy c. formal d. informal
- We add the suffix.....to form the adjective from "nation".....
a. lty b. al c. ed d. ing

اختياري على استنتاج المعنى

- The Earth goes around the sun. This means.....
a. spins b. orbits c. storms d. kills
- "Voyage" means a journey in a ship or.....
a. spaceship b. plane c. train d. bus
- My father "set up" a new company last year. This means he.....a company.
a. finds b. founded c. sold d. fired
- The letter "S" in GPS refers to.....
a. Solar b. Sunny c. Sky d. System
- A toiler works.....
a. hard b. hardly c. lazy d. lazily
- The Earth orbits the sun. The word "orbit" here is a.....
a. adjective b. verb c. adverb d. noun
- How fast is the car? - This means "what.....is the car?"
a. speed b. height c. length d. weight

تمارين كتاب Student's Book & Workbook

1. The Ancient Egyptians used a star called Sirius to find out when the Nile.....
a. flooded b. blooded c. boiled d. fried
2. Ptolemy believed the sun.....the Earth.
a. fitted b. mixed c. spun d. orbited
3. Galileo studied the planets in our.....system.
a. solar b. lunar c. polar d. fire
4. Someone who studies the stars and planets is an.....
a. astronomy b. astronomer c. astrology d. astrologer
5. Astronaut can stay on the.....for a few months.
a. space station b. sea c. fire d. flood
6. A lot of satellites.....the Earth.
a. spin b. laugh c. chases d. orbit
7. There are eight.....in our solar system.
a. stars b. moons c. suns d. planets
8. We can use ato look more closely at the stars.
a. microscope b. funnel c. tunnel d. telescope
9. A satellite sends a.....to a receiver on Earth.
a. site b. size c. signal d. slogan
10. Mars is one of the eight planets in our solar.....
a. area b. region c. system d. signal
11. Azza loves studying the stars and planets, she wants to be an.....
a. actress b. astronomer c. actor d. author
12. The best cameras have a very good.....to let in the correct amount of light.
a. lens b. glasses c. shoes d. covers
13. The moon.....the Earth once every 27 days.
a. orbits b. cleans c. meet d. sails
14. Astronauts can fly in a.....to get to other planets.
a. spacecraft b. metro c. tunnel d. airplane
15. Don't worry, the.....will show us the right way.
a. VAR b. GPS c. LG d. Mg
16. You can't make a phone call because there is no telephone.....here.
a. signal b. glass c. size d. wires
17. This camera can take good photos; it has a very good.....
a. senses b. telescopes c. lens d. fence

ملخص جرامر الوحدة (10) في نقاط

Grammar

الماضي التام The past perfect

١ - يتكون الماضي التام كالآتي

..... مفعول + had + P.P. + فاعل

After he had played, he took a shower.

٢ - يستخدم الماضي التام مع الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدثان في الماضي الحدث الذي تم أولاً (ماضي تام) والحدث الثاني (ماضي بسيط) مع الروابط الزمنية مثل

after - as soon as - before - by the time - when - till - until

١ - After = As soon as ماضى بسيط ماضى تام

After he had eaten, he watched TV.

As soon as she had arrived, they started the party.

٢ - Before = By the time ماضى بسيط ماضى تام

Before they left, they had washed the dishes.

By the time I reached the station, the train had left.

٣ - ماضى تام till / until ماضى بسيط منفي - 3

He didn't go out until he had taken the money.

She didn't cook till she had bought her needs.

معلومات اضافية

١ - إذا لم يأتى فاعل بعد (after / before) نضع (V + ing)

After he had done homework, he slept.

= After doing homework, he slept.

Before she went out, she had helped her mother.

= Before going out, she had helped her mother.

٢- يمكن استخدام كلمة (Having) بدلا من كلمة (after) ويأتي بعدها دائما تصريف ثالث (p.p)

After he had written the letter, he sent it.

Having written the letter, he sent it.

٣- يمكن استخدام الماضي التام والماضي البسيط مع (because)

She was sad because her father hadn't phoned her.

٤- يأتي الماضي التام بعد (سنة / مدة / By) في الماضي

By 2010, he had learnt to swim.

By 7 o'clock this morning, I had done all my jobs.

Exercises on language

Complete the following sentences with the correct form

1. No one had seen a photo of the far side of the moon..... (when) 1959.
2.(Before) Luna 3 had taken photos of the far side of the moon, they appeared in newspapers.
3. I thanked my friend because he had.....(help) my father.
4. After we.....(collect) the information, we did the research.
5. Before his death, the author.....(publish) his story.
6.(after) I left school, I had said goodbye to my friends.
7. Yesterday, I.....(go) to the club after I had finished work.
8. I didn't send the report until I(revise) it.
9. Ramy.....(tidy) his room before he started studying.
10. Huda did very well in the test because she.....(revise) carefully.
11. Malak(doesn't) start reading the book until she had prepared dinner.
12. Munir.....(not try) Japanese food before he went to the new Japanese restaurant.
13. A The astronaut took photos of the far side(before)they orbited the moon.
14. After I(had) lunch, I did my homework.

مراجعته على المضارع التام
Present perfect
والمضارع التام المستمر
Present perfect continuous

تذكر أهم نقاط المضارع التام

١ - يتكون المضارع التام من (have - has) وبعدهم التصريف الثالث

He **has watched** the film.
They **have watched** the film.

٢ - نختار (has) اذا جاء الفاعل (He - She - It) أو اسم مفرد

She **has cooked** lunch.

٣ - نختار (have) اذا جاء الفاعل (I - We - You - They) أو اسم جمع

They **have taken** the money.

٤ - في حالة النفي نستخدم (hasn't - haven't)

Ali **hasn't mended** the car.
We **haven't visited** Aswan.

يستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات الآتية

١ - تأتي كل من (just - already) في الإثبات لتدل على حدوث الفعل

He has **already** written the email.
He has written the email **already**.
She has **just** eaten lunch.

٢ - تأتي (yet) في آخر السؤال والنفي لتدل على عدم حدوث الفعل حتى الآن

Have you studied English **yet**?
She **hasn't** met her friend **yet**.

٣ - تأتي (ever) في وسط السؤال

Have you **ever** travelled abroad?

٤ - تأتي (never) في النفي بمعنى (not)

We have **never** eaten fish.

٥ - تعبر (since) عن بداية الحدث ومعناها منذ أما (for) تعبر عن مدة الحدث

They have lived here **since** 2020.
They have lived here **for** 2 years.

٦ - نستخدم (been to) بمعنى ذهب الى مكان وعاد أما (gone to) ذهب وما زال هناك

He has **been to** England. (He went to England and came back)
He has **gone to** England. (He is still in England)

٧ - يأتي قبل (since) مضارع تام وبعدها ماضي بسيط

She has lived here **since** she was born.

المضارع التام المستمر

١ - المضارع التام المستمر يعبر عن حدث بدأ وما زال مستمراً ويتكون كالآتي

فاعل + have - has + been + V + ing.....

He **has been watching** the film.
They **have been cooking** food.

٢ - في حالة النفي نضع (not) بعد (have - has)

He **hasn't** been playing football.
They **haven't** been sitting in the park.

٣ - في حالة السؤال بـ (هل) يكون الشكل كالآتي

Have - Has + فاعل + been + V + ing.....?

Has he been revising for the exam?
Have you been living in Tanta?

٤ - في حالة السؤال الذي يبدأ بكلمة استفهام يكون الشكل كالآتي

How long + have - has + فاعل + been + V + ing.....?

How long have you been working as a teacher?
I have been working as a teacher for 20 years.

ملاحظه هامة جداً

١ - المضارع التام يعبر عن حدث انتهى أما المضارع التام المستمر يعبر عن حدث بدأ وما زال مستمراً

She **has cooked** lunch. (انتهت من طبخ الغداء)
She **has been cooking** lunch. (مازالت تطبخ الغداء)

٢ - إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل نستخدم مضارع تام

Ali **has read** three novels this month.

Exercises on language

Complete the following sentences with the correct form

1. I haven't.....(be) to this restaurant before.
2. Ahmed.....(read) three books this week. He loves reading.
3. Heba.....(do) her homework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet.
4. Younis.....(read) a new story for an hour, he is still reading it.
5. Someone has.....(broke) the window.
6. I.....(have finished) my homework yet.
7. She has been.....(revised) for the exam.
8. They have been studying.....(since) an hour.
9. Where have you.....(be) waiting?
10. Have you finished your homework.....(never)? - You are excellent.

تمارين على أسئلة المهارات وموضوعات الكتابة

1. Finish the following dialogue

Salma went to Alexandria

- Faten : Where did you go last week?
- Salma : (1).....
- Faten : (2).....?
- Salma : I went with my friends.
- Faten : How did you go there?
- Salma : (3).....
- Faten : (4).....?
- Salma : We saw A lot of interesting things.
- Faten : Did you visit the planetarium?
- Salma : (5).....

2. Read and complete the text with words from the list (4 M)

for - since - Station - astronauts - space - months - decades

The International Space (1)..... is a huge spacecraft 70 km above the Earth. It's a place where (2)..... live and work when they go into (3)..... Most astronauts stay on the Space Station for about six (4).....

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions (6 M)

Heba is a very good girl. She is always energetic. She is not tall. Ten years ago Heba, who was seven years old then, went into her father's library and asked him if she could borrow some books. This made him very happy. Heba's father thought that his daughter was interested in reading. He asked her to take any book. She did what her father told her. She chose many big books and took them to the garden outside the house and put them under an orange tree. Heba's father and mother followed her to see what she would do with the books. They tried not to let her see them. They were surprised when they saw their daughter standing on the big books and picking some oranges. Her father helped her to pick some oranges and told her not to stand on the books again.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. Heba is.....years old now.

- a. fifteen b. seventeen c. seven d. five

2. Heba's father and mother wereto see their daughter standing on the books.

- a. usual b. amazed c. ill d. tired

3. Heba's father followed her to the

- a. library b. kitchen c. garden d. school

b. Answer the following questions

4. Why did Heba put big books under an orange tree?

.....

5. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

.....

6. How many people are there in Heba's family?

.....

أهم موضوعات الكتابة في الوحدة الـ (10)

"A review about the importance of satellites"

أهمية الأقمار الصناعية

Satellites have become very important all over the world. We have used satellites for many things we do every day. We use it for GPS, weather reports, TV and the internet and mobiles phones. GPS is used to show us the way. We use satellites for weather reports. Satellites allow us to study the weather. They show how clouds and storms are moving. We also use satellites for TV and the internet. Lots of people have satellite TV so that they can watch their favourite shows and sports matches. Satellites are used in mobile phones. Satellite phones can work anywhere in the world. They are very useful in places far from cities, such as on mountains or in deserts.

أصبحت الأقمار الصناعية مهمة جداً في جميع أنحاء العالم. لقد استخدمنا الأقمار الصناعية لأشياء كثيرة نقوم بها كل يوم. نستخدمه في نظام تحديد المواقع العالمي (GPS) وتقارير الطقس والتلفزيون والإنترنت والهواتف المحمولة. يستخدم نظام تحديد المواقع لتظهر لنا الطريق. نستخدم الأقمار الصناعية لتقارير الطقس. الأقمار الصناعية تسمح لنا بدراسة الجو. تظهر كيف تتحرك الغيوم والعواصف. كما نستخدم الأقمار الصناعية للتلفزيون والإنترنت. يمتلك الكثير من الأشخاص قنوات فضائية حتى يتمكنوا من مشاهدة برامجهم ومبارياتهم الرياضية المفضلة. نستخدم الأقمار الصناعية في الهواتف المحمولة. يمكن أن تعمل هواتف الأقمار الصناعية في أي مكان في العالم. إنها مفيدة جداً في الأماكن البعيدة عن المدن، مثل الجبال أو في الصحاري.

"A biography of Farouk El - Baz"

سيرة ذاتية عن فاروق الباز

Farouk El - Baz is one of the most important scientists in the world. Farouk El-Baz is an Egyptian American space scientist and geologist. He worked with NASA in the scientific exploration of the Moon and the planning of the Apollo program. He is one of the most important scientists who had done a lot of research before the first man walked on the moon. He helped astronauts to land on the moon. He gave advice to astronauts to collect the rock on the moon. He has studied deserts. He used satellites to find underground water in the desert. His work has helped a lot of countries to find water.

فاروق الباز من أهم العلماء في العالم. فاروق الباز عالم فضاء وجيولوجي مصري أمريكي. عمل مع وكالة ناسا في الاستكشاف العلمي للقمر وتخطيط برنامج أبولو. إنه أحد أهم العلماء الذين أجروا الكثير من الأبحاث قبل أن يمشي الإنسان على القمر. ساعد رواد الفضاء على الهبوط على القمر. قدم نصائح لرواد الفضاء لجمع الصخور على القمر. لقد درس الصحاري. استخدم الأقمار الصناعية للعثور على المياه الجوفية في الصحراء. ساعد عمله الكثير من البلدان في العثور على الماء.

Unit (11)

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الرئيسية

newsreader	قاريء أخبار	website	موقع على الانترنت
nervous	عصبي	witness	شاهد
web designer	مصمم مواقع الكترونية	pipe	ماسورة
owner	مالك	replace	يستبدال
flood	فيضان	shopping center	مركز تسوق
warning	تحذير	governor	محافظ
businesses	محلات تجارية	tourism	السياحة
broadcasters	اذاعيين	editor	محرر صحفي
Arab world	العالم العربي	water park	ملاهي مائية
female	أنثى	broadcasting	بث اذاعي
encourage	يشجع	housewife	ربة منزل
linguist	عالم لغات	awards	جوائز
novels	روايات	faculty	كلية
retire	يتقاعد	graduated	تخرج
cultural	ثقافي	literature	الادب
skyscrapers	ناطحات السحاب	apparently	بوضوح
architect	مهندس معماري	journalist	صحفي
administrative	اداري	mistakes	أخطاء
capital	عاصمة	filming	تصوير

Definitions أهم التعريفات

journalist	صحفي	someone who writes news reports
camera operator	مصور تليفزيوني	a person whose job is to film thing
newsreader	مذيع أخبار	a person whose job is to read the news on TV or radio
photographer	مصور	a person whose job is to take photographs
presenter	مذيع	a person who presents a programme
web designer	مصمم مواقع	a person who designs websites
retired	متقاعد	to leave a job or stop working because of old age

graduated	تخرج	succeed in passing your exams at university
linguist	عالم لغويات	a person who specializes in languages
broadcast	يبث	to send a programme or some information by radio or TV
apparently	بوضوح	according to what you have heard is true
normal	طبيعي	usual, not different
burst	ينفجر	break open suddenly
stuck	عالق بين	not able to move
witness	شاهد	a person who has seen an accident, crime etc.
voice	صوت انسان	sound produced by a person when they speak
governor	محافظ	the person who rules a city or area

اختياري على التعريفات

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. Ais someone who writes news reports.

a. cameraman b. oculist c. journalist d. dentist

2. A person whose job is to read the news on TV or radio is a.....

a. director b. newsreader c. author d. writer

3. A.....is a person who presents a programme.

a. witness b. spectator c. presenter d. interview

4.is to leave a job or stop working because of old age.

a. Retire b. Inquire c. Acquire d. Trial

5. A person who specializes in languages is a.....

a. language b. linguist c. translator d. interviewer

6.is to send a programme or some information by radio or TV.

a. Broadcast b. Waste c. Export d. Import

7.means usual, not different.

a. Formal b. Informal c. Imaginative d. Normal

8.is to break open suddenly.

a. First b. Wet c. Burst d. Thirst

9. A.....is a person who has seen an accident, crime etc.

a. witness b. illness c. fitness d. guilty

10. A.....is sound produced by a person when they speak.

a. voice b. hug c. breathe d. breath

11. A camera.....is a person whose job is to film thing.

a. lens b. photo c. operator d. operation

12. A person whose job is to take photographs is a.....

a. graffiti b. photocopier c. photographer d. manager

13. A.....is the person who rules a city or area.

a. thief b. president c. governor d. graduate

14.means not able to move.

a. Sing

b. Stuck

c. Smell

d. Small

15.means succeed in passing your exams at university.

a. Resigned

b. Retired

c. Fired

d. Graduated

16.means according to what you have heard is true.

a. Enormously

b. Unfortunately

c. Apparently

d. Passively

17. A.....is a person who designs websites.

a. web designer

b. web page

c. website

d. architect

Synonyms & Antonyms

المرادفات والمتضادات

word	synonym	antonym	المعنى
hate	dislike	love	يكره / يحب
large	wide	narrow	واسع / ضيق
outside	outdoors	inside / indoors	بالخارج / بالداخل
unfortunately	unluckily	fortunately	لسوء الحظ / لحسن الحظ
female	woman	male	أنثى / ذكر
cross	angry	calm	غاضب / هادئ
beautiful	attractive	ugly	جميل / قبيح
expensive	costly	cheap	غالي / رخيص

Prefixes

prefix	المعنى	Prefix	المعنى
inexpensive	رخيص	dislike	يكره
infamous	غير معروف	misuse	يستخدم سيئ
unknown	غير معروف	rewrite	يعيد كتابة

Suffixes

Suffix	المعنى	Suffix	المعنى
beauti ful	جميل	administrative	اداري
unfortunat ely	لسوء الحظ	apparent ly	بوضوح
govern or	محافظ	normal ly	بشكل طبيعي

اختياري على Suffixes, prefixes, synonyms & antonyms

1. We add the prefix "....." to mean do something again.
a. re b. ful c. ness d. dis
2. The antonym of "expensive" is.....
a. inexpensive c. cheap c. ugly d. A & B
3. "Unfortunately" and "Unluckily" are.....
a. antonyms b. synonyms c. opposite d. nouns
4. We add the suffix "....." to for the noun from "govern".
a. ist b. al c. ly d. or
5. The synonym of "woman" is.....
a. man b. boy c. male d. female
6. He hates loud music. The antonym of "hates" is.....
a. dislikes b. opposes c. objects d. likes
7. To get the.....from "administrate" we add "ive".
a. nouns b. opposite c. adjective d. adverb
8. We add the prefix "....." to get the antonym of "famous".
a. im b. ive c. on d. in
9. Female and male are.....
a. adverbs b. antonyms c. synonyms d. alike
10. To form the adverb from "normal" we add the suffix.....
a. y b. ily c. ly d. ing
11. I was.....when I lost my bag, I was angry.
a. happy b. delighted c. famous d. cross

اختياري على استنتاج المعنى

12. He was able to mend the pipe. We can replace "mend" with.....
a. mix b. oxen c. fix d. prepare
13. He paid.....money. It was for free.
a. much b. a lot of c. little d. no
14. Her father supported her to learn English. This means he.....her.
a. encouraged b. discouraged c. prevented d. avoided
15. They.....yesterday. This means they were happy.
a. struggled b. fought c. celebrated d. died
16. Atef was the only one who saw the accident. Atef was the only.....
a. witness b. innocent c. guilty d. crime

تمارين كتاب Student's Book & Workbook

1. Ali will be late for work. His car is.....in traffic.
a. shocked b. stuck c. swum d. flooded
- 2.....! This water is very hot.
a. Warning b. Morning c. Falling d. Singing
3. The police want to talk to Ola and the other.....who saw the accident.
a. weakness b. happiness c. witness d. witless

4. We can't play football because the ball has.....
 a. died b. flooded c. burst d. west
5. That.....takes water from the roof of our house to the ground.
 a. fine b. pin c. pan d. pipe
6. My father was.....because my young brothers made so much noise.
 a. cross b. across c. happy d. lazily
7. My favourite newsreader has studied.....and language at university.
 a. media b. geology c. biology d. math
8. Many businessmen have.....with their customers to discuss their work.
 a. meetings b. accidents c. plays d. matches
9. When a ball or pipe has a hole in it, we say that it has.....
 a. swallowed b. dived c. burst d. burnt
10. People often give you a.....when something might be dangerous.
 a. idea b. opinion c. prize d. warning
11. If a car or person is unable to move, we say they are.....
 a. free b. stuck c. joke d. retire
12. Fatma loves writing and is interested in the news, so she would like to be a.....
 a. oculist b. diver c. actress d. journalist
13. Ahmed loves taking photographs, so he wants to be a.....
 a. photographer b. graph c. pilot d. dentist

ملخص جرامر الوحدة (11) في نقاط

Grammar

المبائنر والغير مبائنر Reported speech

ملاحظات عامة

١ - يتحول فعل القول الى (say - says - said - tell - tells - told)

He **said** that Ali **visited** the zoo.

The owner **told** us that the park **had taken** 3 years to build.

٢ - يمكن تحويل فعل القول للكلمات الآتية ولا يأتي بعدهم مفعول (explained - admitted - reported)

The owner **explained** that there **would be** over 100 new jobs next year.

The thief **admitted** that he **stole** the money.

٣ - إذا جاء فعل القول مضارع يأتي الزمن مضارع أو مستقبل وإذا جاء فعل القول ماضي يأتي الزمن ماضي

He **tells** me that he **is watching** TV.

He **told** me that he **was watching** TV.

She **said** that she **had cooked** lunch.

٤ - إذا جاء فعل القول ماضي يتم تحويل علامات الأزمنة وأسماء الإشارة

She **says** that she **is playing** now.

She **said** that she **was playing** then.

١ - إذا قيل الكلام منذ فترة قصيرة لانحول زمن الجملة مثل (just now - a moment ago)

He said **just now** that he will travel tomorrow.

٢ - إذا جاء الكلام داخل الأقواس حقيقة علمية

He **said** that the sun **is** bigger than the Earth.

Exercises on language

Complete the following sentences with the correct form

1. A witness said that the building.....(**is**) on fire.
2. The police said that lots of mobiles.....(**stole**) that year.
3. The man.....(**said**) us that the football tournament would start.
4. The scientists explained that the world.....(**is warming**) because there was climate change.
5. Samy said that he.....(**is**) tired).
6. Dalia said that it.....(**will**) be very hot on Monday.
7. Tarek said that the red team..... (**have**) won the match.
8. The teacher..... (**explain**) that those books had been interesting.
9. Heba said that they.....(**don't**) go to the museum.
10. She said that she had bought a car.....(**yesterday**)
11. Marwa's father.....(**buy**) a big motorbike last week.
12. We.....(**paint**) our house alone a week ago.
13. We were stuck because the bus.....(**break**) down.
14. The actor.....(**were**) expensive sunglasses in yesterday's show.
15. When I was young, I always.....(**talk**) to my teachers politely.

تمارين على أسئلة المهارات وموضوعات الكتابة

1. Finish the following dialogue

Sara and Nawal are talking about jobs in the media

- Sara : Would you like to have a job in the media?
 Nawal : (1).....
 Sara : What job would you like to do?
 Nawal : (2).....
 Sara : (3).....?
 Nawal : Because I love writing and I am interested in the news.
 Sara : I think you will be successful.
 Nawal : (4).....?
 Sara : I want to be a web designer.
 Nawal : (5).....

2. Read and complete the text with words from the list (4 M)**replaced - said - told - stuck - burst - swam**

Yesterday, a large water pipe (1).....and the city was under water for 6 hours. A local witness(2).....that some people were (3).....and couldn't move. The problem was solved when people (4).....the pipe with another one.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions (6 M)

Once, there was a poor farmer living in a village. He grew plants and raised animals. One day, he found that his goose had laid a yellow egg. When he picked it up, it was as heavy as metal and he thought it was bad. He decided to take it home, and he soon found out that the egg was made of gold! Every morning, the same thing happened. The farmer soon became very rich. He sold all the golden eggs at the market. However, the farmer soon became greedy. He thought that there must be a lot of golden eggs inside the goose, so he killed it. When he had killed the goose, he found that there were no eggs inside it.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. The word "raised" animals is the same as.....

a. killed b. sold c. bought d. kept

2. Finally, the farmer became.....and lost the goose.

a. rich b. greedy c. happy d. lucky

3. The underlined word "it" refers to the.....

a. farmer b. goose c. egg d. story

b. Answer the following questions

4. Find in the passage words that mean "golden".

5. What is the moral of the story?

6. What would happen if the farmer didn't kill the goose?

أهم موضوعات الكتابة في الوحدة الـ (11)

"A biography about a person in the media"

سيرة ذاتية للشخصية الاعلامية

There are many famous people who work in the media now and in the past. I think Farouk shousha and Safia el Mohandes are the most important. Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter. In his programmes, he always talked about the beauty of the Arabic Language. He was called the guardian of the Arabic Language. He won many prizes.

Safia el- Mohandes was born in Cairo. She was born in 1922. She was the first female voice on the radio. She presented programmes for women and children. She also presented news, educational advice and drama for the whole family. She helped many people on this field. She was called the mother of the broadcasters. She retired in 1982.

هناك العديد من المشاهير الذين يعملون في وسائل الإعلام الآن وفي الماضي. أعتقد أن فاروق شوشة وصفية المهندس هما الأهم. فاروق شوشة مذيع إذاعي معروف. لطالما تحدث في برامجه عن جمال اللغة العربية. تُقْبَح حارس اللغة العربية. حصل على العديد من الجوائز. ولدت صفية المهندس في القاهرة. ولدت عام ١٩٢٢ ، وكانت أول صوت نسائي في الراديو. قدمت برامج للنساء والأطفال. كما قدمت الأخبار والنصائح التربوية والدراما لجميع أفراد الأسرة. لقد ساعدت الكثير من الناس في هذا المجال. كانت تسمى أم المذيعين. تقاعدت عام ١٩٨٢.

"A review about jobs in the media"

الوظائف في الاعلام

There are many different jobs in the media. I think they are all very important. A journalist is the person who writes and looks for news article. A newsreader reads the news on TV and radio. A photographer is the person whose job is to take photographs. A camera operator is the person who controls TV cameras or film programs. There is a job of a presenter. A presenter is the person who presents programs on a TV or radio. There are other important jobs that relate to online media. A web designer is the person whose job is to design websites. I think all these jobs are useful and we can't do without them.

هناك العديد من الوظائف المختلفة في وسائل الإعلام. أعتقد أنهم جميعاً مهمون جداً. الصحفي هو الشخص الذي يكتب المقالات الإخبارية ويبحث عنها. قارئ الأخبار يقرأ الأخبار على التلفزيون والراديو. المصور هو الشخص الذي تتمثل مهمته في التقاط الصور. مشغل الكاميرا هو الشخص الذي يتحكم في كاميرات التلفزيون أو برامج الأفلام. هناك وظيفة مقدم البرامج. مقدم البرامج هو الشخص الذي يقدم البرامج على التلفزيون أو الراديو. هناك وظائف مهمة أخرى تتعلق بوسائل الإعلام عبر الإنترنت. مصمم الويب هو الشخص الذي تتمثل مهمته في تصميم مواقع الويب. أعتقد أن كل هذه الوظائف مفيدة ولا يمكننا الاستغناء عنها.

Unit (12)

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الرئيسية

cycle lane	ممشى الدراجات	presentation	عرض تقديمي
renewable	متجدد	temperature	درجة الحرارة
in fact	في الحقيقة	floating	طافي / عائ
scientists	علماء	solution	حل
climate change	تغير المناخ	solar panels	ألواح شمسية
tournament	بطولة	farmland	أرض زراعية
popular	محبوب / مشهور	fabric	قمماش
devices	أجهزة	pandemic	وباء
education	التعليم	cashless	غير نقدي
expert	خبير	mask	قناع / كمامة
robotic engineer	مهندس روبوتات	remind	يذكر
recently	حديثا	accountant	محاسب
advantages	مميزات	professional	محترف
materials	مواد	ambition	الطموح
models	نماذج	improve	يحسن
assistant	مساعد	internship	فترة تدريب
virtual reality	الواقع الافتراضي	government	الحكومة
traffic	المرور	marathon	سباق جري
population	تعداد السكان	distance	مسافة
capital	عاصمة	experts	خبراء
monorail	قطار احادي	apartment	شقة
robotics	علم الروبوتات	districts	أحياء / مناطق
experience	خبرة	drones	طائرات بدون طيار
disability	اعاقة	driverless	بدون قائد
skills	مهارات	signs	اشارات
passengers	ركاب	controls	ادوات تحكم

Definitions أهم التعريفات

virtual reality	الواقع الافتراضي	when a computer makes you think that you are in a real place using pictures and sounds
set up	يؤسس	to start a business

internship	فترة تدريب	when you work, often without pay, to learn about a job
online learning	تعلم عبر الانترنت	education or learning that you can have on the internet
marathon	سباق جري	a running race of around 42 kilometers
distance	مسافة	how much space is between two things
monorail	قطار احادي سريع	a railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground
district	منطقة / حي	an area of a town, city or the countryside
cashless	غير نقدي	done without using money you can hold
skill	مهارة	the ability to do something well
professional qualification	مؤهل احترافي	something that shows you have special training to do a job
cycle lane	ممشى الدراجات	a special place where people can cycle on roads
assistant	مساعد	somebody who helps a person do their job
controls	ادوات التحكم	things used to operate a vehicle or machine
definitely	بالتأكيد	certainly, without doubt
e-sport player	لاعب العاب الكترونية	a player of online video games
likely	من المحتمل	probably going to happen or probably true
robotic engineer	مهندس روبوتات	a person whose job is to design or work with robots
3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية	a machine that can make copies of whole objects
temperature	درجة الحرارة	how hot or cold something is
train	يتدرب	to prepare for a sports event by exercising

اختياري على التعريفات

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1.reality is when a computer makes you think that you are in a real place using pictures and sounds.

a. Virtual b. Social c. Lunar d. Solar

2.is to start a business.

a. Sit down b. Set up c. Vanish d. Retire

3. When you work, often without pay, to learn about a job means.....

a. friendship b. shipping c. shopping d. internship

4.learning means education or learning that you can have on the internet.

a. Home b. Offline c. Disconnected d. Online

5. A.....is a running race of around 42 kilometers.

a. Marathon b. Falcon c. Trek d. quiz

6.means how much space is between two things.

- a. Pollution b. Population c. Distance d. Affection
7. A railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground is.....
- a. airway b. subway c. highway d. monorail
8. A.....is an area of a town, city or the countryside.
- a. Brick b. Strike c. Effect d. District
9.means done without using money you can hold.
- a. Cashless b. Free c. Expensive d. Cheap
10.is the ability to do something well.
- a. Smell b. Sell c. Skill d. Skull
11. Something that shows you have special training to do a job is a..... qualification.
- a. stolen b. Hidden c. professional d. amateur
12. A.....is a special place where people can cycle on roads.
- a. cycle loom b. cycle map c. cycle lane d. cycle mop
13. Somebody who helps a person do their job is an.....
- a. seller b. customer c. client d. assistant
14.are things used to operate a vehicle or machine.
- a. Fuel b. Key c. Controls d. Compete
15.means certainly, with doubt.
- a. Definitely b. Difficulty c. Mysterious d. Funny
16. An.....player is a player of online video games.
- a. e-book b. e-mail c. e-sport d. website
17.means probably going to happen or probably true.
- a. Unlikely b. Impossible c. Imaginary d. Likely
18. A.....engineer is a person whose job is to design or work with robots.
- a. antibiotic b. robotic c. toiler d. untidy
19. A.....is a machine that can make copies of whole objects.
- a. Mp3 b. 3D glasses c. 3D printer d. keyboards
20.means how hot or cold something is.
- a. Pollution b. Temperature c. Drought d. Flood
21.is to prepare for a sports event by exercising.
- a. Train b. Plain c. Treat d. Trim

Synonyms & Antonyms

المترادفات والمتضادات

word	synonym	antonym	المعنى
popular	known	unpopular	مشهور / غير معروف
new	modern	old	جديد / قديم
advantage	pros	disadvantage	ميزة / عيب
interesting	exciting	boring	شيق / ممل
float	swim	sink	يطفو / يغرق
hard	difficult	easy	صعب / سهل
distant	remote	near / close	بعيد / قريب

protect	save	damage	يحمي / يدمر
agree	accept	disagree	يوافق / لا يوافق
begin	start	finish	يبدأ / ينتهي
take off	fly	land	تقلع الطائرة / تهبط

Prefixes

prefix	المعنى	Prefix	المعنى
impossible	مستحيل	monorail	قطار احادي
renewable	متجدد	disability	اعاقة
disagree	لا يوافق	unpopular	غير معروف
recycle	يعيد تدوير	illegal	غير قانوني

Suffixes

Suffix	المعنى	Suffix	المعنى
driverless	بدون قائد	robotics	علم الروبوتات
recently	حديثاً	likely	من المحتمل
historical	تاريخي	internship	فترة تدريب
professional	محترف	luckily	لحسن الحظ

اختياري على Suffixes, prefixes, synonyms & antonyms

- To form the opposite from "ability" we add the prefix.....
a. mis b. dis c. im d. ness
- "Protect" and.....are synonyms.
a. save b. kill c. destroy d. damage
- The prefix"....." means one.
a. tri b. bi c. mono d. er
- The plane landed safely. The antonym of "landed" is.....
a. took on b. took in c. took off d. took place
- The antonym of "amateur" is.....
a. free b. professional c. unpaid d. cashless
- We add the prefix.....to get the opposite of agree.
a. dis b. miss c. less d. ness
-is the opposite of close.
a. Near b. Sad c. Remote d. Cute
-means use again.
a. Mono b. Less c. Ness d. Re
- We add the suffix.....to "cash" to form the adjective.
a. il b. less c. er d. ment
- We add "ly" to form the....."likely".
a. verb b. adjective c. suffix d. noun

اختياري على استنتاج المعنى

11. Mo Salah is a.....player. He earns much money as a player.
 a. professor b. professional c. amateur d. retired
12. He achieved his goal and became a doctor. The word "goal" here means.....
 a. ambition b. epidemic c. sight d. weight
13. He lives in a flat overlooking the Nile. We can replace "flat" with.....
 a. department b. important c. villa d. apartment
14. Drones are driverless. They use.....drivers.
 a. skilled b. lazy c. educated d. no
15. Flying cars could land far away. There word "land" here means.....
 a. area b. region c. come down d. fly

تمارين كتاب Student's Book & Workbook

1. The toy moves like a robot. It is very.....
 a. still b. robotic c. unmovable d. polluted
2. The train doesn't use oil. It is.....
 a. electrician b. electric c. electricity d. electronic
3. Our teacher can speak English, Spanish and.....
 a. Italy b. France c. Arab d. Arabic
4. The firefighters saved a family from a fire. They were very.....
 a. lazy b. unskilled c. hero d. heroic
5. This is a.....which can check people's temperature.
 a. advice b. advise c. devise d. device
6. This math question is very difficult. What is the.....?
 a. solution b. solve c. results d. answers
7. We should produce more food to.....more poor people in the world.
 a. fail b. fool c. feed d. eat
8. At the museum, you can see how the Ancient Egyptians lived using.....reality.
 a. vice b. virtual c. marital d. funeral
9. Prices usually.....all over the world every year.
 a. rise b. fleet c. flood d. rice
10. Fares designed a game, but his computer broke, so he has to.....it.
 a. redesigned b. remind c. remakes d. redo
11. When you touch the car controls, you want to.....the car.
 a. drive b. damage c. sell d. destroy
12.are rules we must follow.
 a. Lows b. Paws c. Laws d. Rose
13. When scientists do a lot of testing, they want to make sure that the device is.....
 a. dangerous b. bad c. useless d. safe
14. Taha's dream is to be asports star. He is in a local team now.
 a. professional b. international c. ambitious d. amateur
15. Fatma is going to get an.....after finishing university.
 a. degree b. certificate c. graduate d. internship

16. I am going to do an.....course on the internet.
a. online b. difficult c. national d. formal
17. Malak wants to help to protect the environment. She is going to work as a.....
a. engineer b. volunteer c. environment d. oculist
18. All cities should have cycle.....so it is safer to go by bike.
a. wins b. pans c. lanes d. fins
19. A/An.....is useful for printing complex designs.
a. 3D printer b. Mp3 c. SOS d. printers
20. A person who designs robots is called a/an.....engineer.
a. phonetics b. gymnastic c. robotics d. attic
21. You can drive a car using the.....
a. pedals b. weavers c. controls d. ovens
22. Many young people take a/an.....business to learn about the job.
a. spaceship b. internship c. hardship d. chips
23. Don't throw this bottle away, we can.....it.
a. damage b. kill c. destroy d. reuse

ملخص جرامر الوحدة (12) في نقاط

Grammar

Revision on Future

١ - نستخدم (مصدر + **will / won't**) للتعبير عن التوقع أو الاحتمال بدون دليل أو الرأي الشخصي أو التعبير عن العمر والقرار السريع في وجود كلمات مثل (think - expect - I am sure.....)

In the future, we **will use** renewable energy.
E-sports are popular, but they **won't be** more popular than football.
I think, he **will win** the prize.
My father **will be** 75 next year.
There is no sugar, I **will buy** some.

٢ - نستخدم (مصدر + **am / is / are going to**) في حالتين

للتعبير عن النية لفعل شيء وغالباً في وجود كلمات مثل (intend / intention / decide / decision / plan)

They have **intended**, they **are going to** sell the house.
When I'm older, I'm **going to work** as a volunteer at weekends.

للتعبير عن شيء سيحدث طبقاً لدليل مثل وجود السحب دليل على حدوث المطر

There are a lot of clouds. It **is going to** rain.

فكرة هامة جداً

إذا جاءت كلمة (think) مع وجود دليل فإن الدليل هو الأقوي لذا نختار (am - is - are going to)

There are a lot of clouds; I think it **is going to** rain.

٣ - نستخدم المضارع المستمر (am /is/are + V+ ing) للتعبير عن الأشياء التي رتبنا أن نفعلها في المستقبل مع كلمات مثل

(arrange / arrangements / prepare)

وكذلك مع الحفلات والمناسبات

They have bought the tickets. They **are visiting** Aswan tomorrow.

He **is having** a party tomorrow. (He has arranged everything)

التعبير عن القدرة والاستطاعة في المستقبل

١ - للتعبير عن القدرة أو الاستطاعة في المستقبل نستخدم

مصدر + will be able to + فاعل

Farmers **will be able to** make their electricity.

She **will be able to** write English well.

٢ - في النفي نستخدم الشكل الاتي

مصدر + won't be able to + فاعل

We **won't be able to** grow food.

He **won't be able to** drive a car.

٣ - في السؤال بمعنى هل يكون الشكل كالاتي

Will + مصدر + be able to + فاعل +?

Will you **be able to** swim?

Yes, I will.

No, I won't.

٤ - في حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام يكون الشكل كالاتي

...? مصدر + be able to + فاعل + will + أداة استفهام

What will you **be able to** do?

I will be able to drive a car.

Complete the following sentences with the correct form

1. I think that more people will.....(**rides**) bikes in the future.
2. We won't(**having**) as many cars on the road.
3. There(**well**) be lots of challenges in the future.
4. We will have to..... (**finds**) new ways to grow food in the future.
5. We..... (**doesn't**) grow food in the same way in the future.
6. In future, I think we.....(**aren't**) produce electricity in lots of different ways.
7. There will(**been**) more people in the city in 2050, I am not sure.
8. I think there will(**definite**) be more tall buildings.
9. What do you think our city(**is**) be like in 2050?
10. What(**the weather will**) be like tomorrow?
11. Talia speaks Japanese, so she will be able to.....(**applying**) for the job.

12. Adam has hurt his leg, so he won't.....(able) to play football.
13. Hamid can't find his passport, He.....(will) be able to travel tomorrow.
14. It is very wind, we won't..... (been) able to go to the beach.
15. What is Hany..... (go) to learn?
16. In the future, we won't all be..... (capable) to fly.
17. He has arranged everything, he.....(has) a party.
18. The phone is ringing, I will.....(answering) it.
19. I can't go with you, I am.....(do) my homework.
20. There will definitely.....(are) drones.

تمارين على أسئلة المهارات وموضوعات الكتابة

1. Finish the following dialogue

Manar and Eman are talking about goals and ambitions

- Manar : Do you have future goals?
- Eman : (1).....
- Manar : What is your first goal?
- Eman : I want to finish my education and join university.
- Manar : (2).....?
- Eman : I would like to join the faculty of medicine.
- Manar : (3).....?
- Eman : To help sick people get better. What about you?
- Manar : (4).....
- Eman : What does a robotic engineer do?
- Manar : (5).....

2. Read and complete the text with words from the list (4 M)

advice - able - capable - devices - charge - electricity

Have you heard of a shirt that can (1).....your phone? Scientists have made new fabric that produces (2).....as it moves. This means that we will be (3).....to charge our (4).....as we run or walk outside.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions (6 M)

I come from Okinawa in Japan and the diet on my island is very healthy. This is for three reasons. Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables. We eat green purple and yellow vegetables like spinach, sweet potato and peppers. Furthermore, we don't have much fat in our diet: we only eat a little meat and a few dairy products. Another important thing is that we eat a very healthy

breakfast. We have soup with spinach or egg with rice, and this gives us lots of energy to start the day. As you can see, our diet is healthy. That's why Okinawans live a long time. Some of the oldest people in the world live on my island.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. The most appropriate word for "diet" is

a. food b. crop c. subject d. juice

2. W shouldn't eat.....diet.

a. unhealthy b. healthy c. useful d. essential

3. Okinawa is expected to be an.....in Japan.

a. city b. town c. island d. diet

b. Answer the following questions

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....
5. Why do you think people in Okinawa live a long time?

.....
6. If you had the chance, would you live on Okinawa? Why/ Why not?

أهم موضوعات الكتابة في الوحدة الـ (12)

"A review about future technology"

تكنولوجيا المستقبل

In the future, there will be some forms of technology. These forms will affect our future. One of them is driverless cars. Driverless cars will help us travel to travel anywhere without touching the controls. They will depend on electricity. They will be better for the environment. Some experts believe that we will have to wait until 2030 to use these cars. Although they driverless cars have a lot of pros, they have some problems. They need a lot of testing to be safe to use. We will have to make new laws. We also will have to make our roads better. We need change road signs so that computer can read them well.

في المستقبل ، ستكون هناك بعض أشكال التكنولوجيا. ستؤثر هذه الأشكال على مستقبلنا. واحد منهم سيارات ذاتية القيادة. ستساعدنا السيارات ذاتية القيادة في السفر إلى أي مكان دون لمس أدوات التحكم. سوف يعتمدون على الكهرباء. سيكونون أفضل للبيئة. يعتقد بعض الخبراء أنه سيتعين علينا الانتظار حتى عام ٢٠٣٠ لاستخدام هذه السيارات. على الرغم من أن السيارات ذاتية القيادة بها الكثير من الإيجابيات ، إلا أنها تواجه بعض المشكلات. يحتاجون إلى الكثير من الاختبارات ليكونوا آمنين للاستخدام. سيتعين علينا سن قوانين جديدة. سيتعين علينا أيضاً أن نجعل طرقنا أفضل. نحتاج إلى تغيير لافتات الطريق حتى يتمكن الكمبيوتر من قراءتها جيداً.

"A review about your personal goals and ambitions"

أهدافك الشخصية وطموحاتك

It is important to have goals and ambitions. It is important to work hard to achieve them. I have a lot of goals and ambitions. When I leave Preparatory school, I'd like to go to a technology school. My dream is to become a robotics engineer. I have other goals. I want to work as a volunteer for a charity. I want to meet new people. I want to improve my skills, so I want to join an online course. When I finish my university, I am going to get an internship. After that I will set up my own business. I will have a company that will make robots.

من المهم أن يكون لديك أهداف وطموحات. من المهم العمل الجاد لتحقيقها. لدي الكثير من الأهداف والطموحات. عندما أنتهى من المدرسة الإعدادية ، أود الذهاب إلى مدرسة التكنولوجيا. حلمي هو أن أصبح مهندس روبوتات. لدي أهداف أخرى. اريد ان اعمل كمتطوع لجمعية خيرية. انا اريد التعرف على ناس جدد. أرغب في تحسين مهاراتي ، لذلك أرغب في الانضمام إلى دورة تدريبية عبر الإنترنت. عندما أنهى جامعتي ، سأحصل على فترة تدريب. بعد ذلك سوف أقوم بتأسيس عملي الخاص. سيكون لدي شركة تصنع روبوتات.

جزء المراجعة النهائية

لطلبة الأزهر

حسب أحدث مواصفات
الترم الثاني

وتتضمن كيفية التعامل مع سؤال

المواقف

المحادثة

نماذج امتحانية حسب المواصفات

أولا كيفية التعامل مع سؤال المواقف

- ١ - نحدد المطلوب أولا هل يريد سؤال أم اجابة على سؤال
- ٢ - اذا جاءت كلمة (You ask) فهنا يريد سؤال
- ٣ - اذا جاءت (Someone asks) هنا يريد اجابة
- ٤ - اذا جاءت (You are asked) فهنا يريد اجابة

ثانيا أهم إسئلة المواقف وحلها

١	للسؤال عن الرأي نقول
What do you think of....? / What is your opinion.....?	
٢	عند اعطاء الرأي نقول
I think..... / in my opinion.....	
٣	عند الموافقة على الرأي نقول
I agree with you. / I think so.	
٤	عند عدم الموافقة على الرأي نقول
I disagree with you. / I don't think so.	
٥	عند الاقتراح نقول
What / How about + V + ing.....? / Let's + مصدر	
٦	عند قبول الاقتراح نقول
Ok, it is a good / great / wonderful idea.	
٧	عند رفض الاقتراح نقول
I am not keen. / I am not interested	
٨	عند اعطاء النصيحة
You should / shouldn't + مصدر	
٩	عند قبول النصيحة نقول
You are right / Ok I will.	
١٠	عند عرض المساعدة نقول
Can I help you?	
١١	عند طلب المساعدة نقول
Can you help me? / Can you give me a hand?	
١٢	عندما نشكر شخص على شيء نقول
Thanks / Thank you so much	
١٣	عند الاعتذار عن شيء نقول
I am sorry for.....	

١٤	عند الطلب المهذب نقول	Could you + مصدر , please?
١٥	للسؤال عن عادة في الماضي	Did you use to + مصدر?
١٦	عند الدعوة أو عرض الشيء	Would you like to + مصدر?
١٧	عند السؤال عن موطن حيوان أو أين يعيش	What is the habitat of.....? / Where does.....live?

Models with answers

Write what you would say

- You ask you friend where caracals live.
Where do caracals live?
- You are asked where caracals live.
Caracals live in grasslands.
- You meet a tourist for the first time.
How do you do?
- You advise your sister to study hard.
You should study hard.
- Someone asks your opinion about the film.
I think it was an interesting film.
- You want your sister to open the window.
Could you open the door, please?
- Your teacher asks you if you had a habit in the past.
I used to play football in the club.
- You apologize for losing your sister's mobile.
I am sorry for losing your mobile.
- You ask someone to give you a hand.
Can you help me?
- Someone has helped you cross the street.
Thank you.
- You ask your father about his opinion of the match.
What is your opinion of the match?
- You suggest visiting one of the natural wonders.
How about visiting Al Nayzak Lake?
- You ask your teacher about the forms of energy.
What are the forms of energy?
- Your brother has asked you to name two kinds of renewable energy.
Solar energy and wind power.
- You are asked about a solution to solve the problem of global warming.
We should plant more trees.

اختياري على سؤال الجرامر خاص بالأزهر فقط

Unit (7)

1. Books.....of paper.
a. made b. making c. are made d. are making
2. Are the emails.....by Hala?
a. send b. sending c. sends d. sent
3. The Pyramids.....by the ancient Egyptians.
a. were built b. was built c. is built d. built
4. The book.....written by her.
a. isn't b. weren't c. didn't d. doesn't
5. The zoo is.....by many people.
a. visit b. visits c. visiting d. visited

Unit (8)

6. If he.....rich, he will buy many things.
a. am b. has c. is d. have
7. What will you.....if you win a prize?
a. do b. does c. did d. done
8. If it....., I won't go outside.
a. rain b. rained c. raining d. rains
9. If he gets enough money, he will.....the poor.
a. help b. helping c. helps d. helped
10. He will sell the house if he.....money.
a. need b. needed c. needing d. needs
11. He promised.....me some money.
a. give b. to gives c. gave d. to give
12. Please, avoid.....late.
a. come b. coming c. to come d. comes
13. He suggested.....in the park.
a. walk b. walks c. walked d. walking
14. I am looking forward to.....my friends.
a. meet b. met c. meeting d. meets
15. I'd prefer.....a cup of coffee.
a. drink b. drinks c. drinking d. to drink
16. He arrived early.....he caught the bus.
a. because of b. that's why c. due to d. however
17. They played well., they lost.
a. so b. because c. since d. Nevertheless

Unit (9)

18. If I were them, Icome late for school.
 a. will b. won't c. would d. wouldn't
19. If I.....money, I would buy a new car.
 a. am b. has c. were d. had
20. If they..... well, they would lose.
 a. played b. play c. don't play d. didn't play
21. If they didn't plant trees, the problem could.....worse.
 a. be b. get c. was d. A & B
22. He would travel abroad if he..... a passport.
 a. has b. have c. had d. having
23. My father used to.....on a ship.
 a. work b. works c. worked d. working
24. Where did they.....to live? - In Tanta.
 a. uses b. used c. using d. use
25. She used to.....clever at cooking, but now she isn't.
 a. be b. was c. were d. did
26. Ehab didn't.....to play well, but now he does.
 a. used b. uses c. using d. use
27. We didn't use to visit Aswan, but we.....now.
 a. do b. does c. did d. were

Unit (10)

28. After we the museum, we decided to have lunch.
 a. visiting b. has visited c. had visited d. visit
29. Having..... lunch, they left.
 a. eat b. eaten c. ate d. eating
30. By 2010, I French
 a. had learnt b. have learnt c. has learnt d. learn
31. Before homework, he had had his lunch.
 a. do b. did c. doing d. had done
32.he had studied his lessons, he watched TV.
 a. Having b. Before c. After d. While
33. I.....travelled by plane.
 a. haven't b. isn't c. aren't d. hasn't
34. What have you been.....?
 a. read b. reads c. reading d. to reads
35. Have you.....seen a lion?
 a. ever b. yet c. since d. for
36. She has been cooking.....2 hours.
 a. since b. ago c. for d. while
37. I.....been reading a novel recently.
 a. have b. has c. are d. is

Unit (11)

38. He.....me that he visited Aswan.

- a. said b. tells c. told d. says

39. She said that she.....lunch.

- a. cook b. cooks c. cooked d. will cook

40. Ali explained that they.....the money.

- a. take b. takes c. will take d. took

41. He said that Mona.....at home.

- a. was b. is c. are d. has

42. She.....them that she won the prize.

- a. told b. said c. explained d. tells

Unit (12)

43. He.....me that he visited Aswan.

- a. said b. tells c. told d. says

44. She said that she.....lunch.

- a. cook b. cooks c. cooked d. will cook

45. Ali explained that they.....the money.

- a. take b. takes c. will take d. took

46. He said that Mona.....at home.

- a. was b. is c. are d. has

47. She.....them that she won the prize.

- a. told b. said c. explained d. tells

48. They will be able to.....electricity.

- a. make b. makes c. making d. made

49.you be able to speak English?

- a. Have b. Do c. Will d. Did

50. She.....be able to travel.

- a. won't b. hasn't c. doesn't d. didn't

نماذج امتحانات الأزهر حسب أحدث المواصفات 2022

Model Exam (1)

1. Finish the following dialogue (3 Marks)

Rehab is reading a story about horses

Samar : What are you doing?

Rehab : (1).....

Samar : (2).....?

Rehab : It is called "Black Beauty".

Samar : What is it about?

Rehab : (3).....

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situation (2 Marks)

1. You ask your friend where lions live.

2. Someone tell you that renewable energy is good for the environment.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d (5 Marks)

1. Al Nayzak Lake is a natural.....

a. wonder b. wander c. energy d. stable

2. Some sentences are tongue.....They are difficult to repeat.

a. foster b. cover c. base d. twister

3. The museum is.....by many tourists.

a. visit b. visits c. visiting d. visited

4.is bad for the environment because we cut more trees.

a. Deforestation b. Volcanoes c. Earthquake d. Flood

5. He decided.....abroad.

a. to travel b. travelling c. travelled d. travels

4. Read the following passage (5 Marks)

Ali is a smart boy. He likes modern technology and he is great with computers and machines. He decided to design a robot, so he went to his room and started to design it. First, he worked on the wires and lights then he started making the body of the robot. He cut some pieces of metal and plastic to make the robot. He wanted the robot to be able to move around and do things at home. He had to use his computer to tell the robot what to do. The final step was to decorate

the robot. He added paint and stickers and gave the robot a friendly face. When he switched the robot on, the robot said "Hello! Can I help you? ". He became very happy.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Ali use to make the body of the robot?

.....

2. How could Ali tell the robot what to do?

.....

3. In your opinion, why did Ali become happy?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "it" refers to

a. technology b. robot c. computer d. Ali

5. The word "smart" in the passage means.....

a. intelligent b. stupid c. lazy d. sad

5. Write a paragraph of six sentences on: (5 Marks)

"Some natural wonders"

Model Exam (2)

1. Finish the following dialogue (3 Marks)

Mazin : Is solar energy a renewable source?

Tamer : (1).....

Mazin : (2).....?

Tamer : It comes from the sun.

Mazin : Why is it good for the environment?

Tamer : (3).....

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situation (2 Marks)

1. You ask your sister about the writer of the story.

.....

2. You are asked about your future goal.

.....

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d (5 Marks)

1. Rich people have.....where horses are kept.
a. tables b. stables c. pipes d. attics
2. We should.....rubbish to protect the environment.
a. cycle b. exports c. burn d. horns
3. If she.....lunch, they will eat at home.
a. cook b. cooked c. had cooked d. cooks
4. My father works as a.....He writes news and articles.
a. astronaut b. journalist c. firefighter d. pilot
- 5.....many photos taken by tourists yesterday?
a. Did b. Do c. Are d. Were

4. Read the following passage (5 Marks)

When I was in Oman, I had many friends. One of my friends had a boy. The boy was 17 years old. One day, he was walking on the beach in his city, when he heard someone shouting for help. He saw a man waving to him from the sea. The boy rushed into the water and brought the man safely to the shore. Later, the man, who was a tourist from Germany, said that the boy was a brave boy who saved his life. The German tourist had invited the boy to visit Germany as a thank you.

A. Answer the following questions

1. What nationality was the tourist?
.....
2. What was the boy doing when he heard the man?
.....
3. Give a word from the passage which is the antonym of "cowardly".
.....

B. Choose the correct answer

4. The tourist decided to.....the boy.
a. kill b. destroy c. reward d. punish
5. The boy was.....years old.
a. seventeen b. seventy c. sixteen d. seven

5. Write a paragraph of six sentences on: (5 Marks)

"Your future goals and ambitions"

Model Exam (3)1. Finish the following dialogue (3 Marks)

Sandy is going to visit her uncle

- Sila : Where are you going next month?
 Sandy : (1).....
 Sila : Why are you going to England?
 Sandy : (2).....
 Sila : (3).....?
 Sandy : I will stay for a week.

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situation (2 Marks)

1. Someone has helped you.

.....

2. You ask you teacher to tell you what the word "tongue-twister" means.

.....

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d (5 Marks)

1. If you.....to do something, you will definitely do it.

- a. promise b. suggest c. deny d. avoids

2. My uncle worked as a.....he used to make cloth by weaving.

- a. sailor b. weaver c. astronaut d. diver

3. He used to.....hard when he was young.

- a. working b. works c. worked d. work

4. We should find a.....to our problems.

- a. solution b. suggestions c. plate d. idea

5. After.....my homework, I played computer games.

- a. had done b. did c. done d. done

4. Read the following passage (5 Marks)

Egypt is located at the point where Africa and Asia meet. It lies between the Mediterranean Sea in the north, and the Red Sea in the east. Because of its position, and early development, it had great influence on the development of other civilizations in Europe, Africa and Asia. Egypt's two most important geographical features are its deserts, and the River Nile. The Nile, which is 6,650 km long, is the longest river in the world. The water which it supplies makes the narrow strip of land around it very green and fertile.

A. Answer the following questions

1. What is the location of Egypt?

.....

2. What are the main geographical features of Egypt?

.....

3. What length is the river Nile?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer

4. Africa and Asia are.....

a. cities b. towns c. continents d. island

5. The underlined word "it" refers to.....

a. The Nile b. Egypt c. Africa d. water

5. Write a paragraph of six sentences on: (5 Marks)

"The uses of satellites"

Model Exam (4)1. Finish the following dialogue (3 Marks)

Farha wants to be a website designer

Yasser : Do you have a goal for the future?

Farha : (1).....

Yasser : What would you like to be?

Farha : (2).....

Yasser : (3).....?

Farha : A web designer designs online sites.

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situation (2 Marks)

1. Someone asks you if you know Farouk el - Baz.

.....

2. Your teacher asks you to name two jobs in the media.

.....

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d (5 Marks)

1.is the job of growing plants and keeping animals.

- a. Industry b. Archaeology c. Farming d. Nursing

2.means very big.

- a. Tiny b. Enormous c. Funny d. Small

3. They will be able.....solar energy.

- a. to use b. using c. use d. used

4. A.....is an area in a city or town.

- a. ocean b. island c. district d. artist

5. They didn't go out.....they had done washing up.

- a. while b. before c. until d. since

4. Read the following passage (5 Marks)

The person I admire in my family is my grandfather. He was born in 1940. He worked as a doctor. He worked in a big hospital. All people there liked him because he was kind and helpful. I admire him because he did voluntary work and helped people for no money. I like him because he gave me many presents and helped me a lot. He used to help the poor and give them money. He always advised me to help people all the times. When he died last year, people were all sad. He left all his money for poor people and asked us to build a hospital for them.

A. Answer the following questions

1. What was your grandfather's date of birth?

.....

2. What did he leave for the poor?

.....

3. What does the underlined word "him" refer to?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer

4. The word admire means.....

- a. dislike b. hate c. kill d. love

5. My grandfather asked us to build a.....for the poor.

- a. hospital b. club c. school d. home

5. Write a paragraph of six sentences on: (5 Marks)

"A trip to Cairo"

Model Exam (5)1. Finish the following dialogue (3 Marks)

Farid and Sara are talking about trees

Farid : Are trees very important?

Sara : (1).....

Farid : (2).....?

Sara : They are important because they help the environment.

Farid : How do they help the environment?

Sara : (3).....

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situation (2 Marks)

1. You broke your friend's camera.

.....

2. Your friend thinks that mobiles are not useful. You disagree.

.....

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d (5 Marks)

1.means to make or produce.

a. Lose b. Destroy c. Create d. Miss

2. Trees.....carbon dioxide and give us oxygen.

a. absorb b. breathe out c. give out d. export

3. He told me that he.....the book.

a. will read b. had read c. is reading d. reads

4. We use solar.....to make electricity.

a. pipes b. tubes c. panels d. doors

5. Egypt.....by many tourists.

a. is visited b. is visiting c. visit d. visited

4. Read the following passage (5 Marks)

The Titanic, the biggest ship in the world hit an iceberg in the Atlantic Ocean and sank. The ship, which belonged to the White Star Line Company, was sailing from Southampton to New York on her first voyage. It was carrying over 2,200 passengers but only about 700 survived mostly women and children. When the Titanic began to sink, the radio operators sent a message to other ships in the area. One ship, the Carpathia, was about 93 kilometres away. When it received the Titanic's message, it turned around and came to help. But it

could not get to the Titanic for four hours. The Carpathia rescued the survivors from lifeboats in the water, and took them to New York.

A. Answer the following questions

1. What is the passage about?

.....

2. How many people were rescued?

.....

3. What was the Titanic destination?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer

4. I think Carpathia is the name of a.....

a. ship

b. animal

c. crop

d. seed

5. The underlined word "which" refers to the.....

a. captain

b. sea

c. Carpathia

d. Titanic

5. Write a paragraph of six sentences on: (5 Marks)

"fossil fuels"

الرجاء دعوة من القلب لصاحب هذا العمل

UNIT 7: Our world

اليوم الأول

A Vocabulary

coastal	ساحلي
grassland	أرض عشبية
polar	قطبي
rainforest	غابات ممطرة
wetland	أرض مبللة (رطبة)
habitat	موطن ، بيئة طبيعية
fossils	حفريات
preserved	محفوظ
species	فصائل ، سلالات
mountain	جبل
surround(-ed)	يحيط بـ
length	طول
remote	بعيد
depression	منخفض
statue	تمثال
cruel	قاسٍ
postman	رجل البريد
turtle	سلحفاة
poem	قصيدة
tongue-twister	صعبة النطق
sea shells	أصداف البحر
confused	مرتبك ، متحير
orangutan	إنسان الغاب
treat(-ed)	يتعامل مع
temperature	درجة الحرارة
fill(-ed)	يملاً
cover(-ed)	يغطي

wonders	عجائب
natural	طبيعي
oasis	واحة
shape	شكل
shooting stars	الشهاب
meteorite	نيزك
product	منتج
location	موقع
date palm trees	شجر النخيل
terrible	فظيع
stable	إسطبل
owner	مالك
carriage	عربة حنطور
protect(-ed)	يحمي
fur	فرو
appearance	مظهر خارجي
skill	مهارة
life style	أسلوب حياة
population	السكان
springs	ينابيع مياه
deforestation	إزالة الغابات
active	نشط
polar bear	الدب القطبي
ocean	محيط
sunlight	ضوء الشمس
endanger(-ed)	يُعرّض للخطر
control(-led)	يتحكم في

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word		Synonym	Antonym
cruel	قاسٍ	unkind	kind طيب
hard	صعب	difficult	easy سهل ، عادي
terrible	فظيع	very bad	amazing مذهش
wet	ممطر ، مُبلل	rainy	dry جاف
warm	دافئ	quite hot	cool بارد
natural	طبيعي	normal	unnatural غير طبيعي
famous	معروف ، مشهور	popular / known	unpopular / unknown غير معروف
filled	مملوء	full	empty فارغ
huge	ضخم	enormous	tiny صغير جدًا
local	محلي	native	stranger غريب
in danger	في خطر	unsafe	safe آمن
beautiful	جميل	pretty	ugly قبيح
ancient	قديم	old	new/modern جديد
active	نشط	energetic	lazy كسول

بادئات ولاحقات

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
re-	do again يقوم بالفعل مرة أخرى	write → re write
en-	make verbs تكوين أفعال	danger → en danger
un-	not نفي	kind → un kind natural → un natural able → un able happy → un happy
Suffix	Parts of speech	Examples
-al	noun → adjective	coast → al coastal nature → al natural nation → al national
-y	noun → adjective	rain → y rainy wind → y windy health → y healthy
-ing	verb → adjective	amaze → ing amazing include → ing including
-ance	verb → noun	appear → ance appearance
-ation -ion	verb → noun	invite → ation invitation locate → ion location

Important Definitions تعريفات هامة

Word	Definition
carriage عربة تجرها الخيول	a vehicle pulled by a horse or horses
coastal ساحلي	describing or belonging to land that is next to the sea
confused متحير ، مرتبك	unable to understand something clearly
deforestation إزالة الغابات	the cutting down of trees in a large area, or the destruction of forests by people
depression منخفض	the land that is below the area around it
fossils حفريات	parts of plants or animals that lived thousands of years ago
fur فرو	the thick hair that covers the body of an animal
grassland أرض عشبية	a large natural area of land which is mostly grass
habitat موطن ، بيئة	the natural home of an animal or plant
label لافتة ، ملصق	a word or phrase to explain things in a picture
length طول	how long something is
mongoose حيوان النمى	a small animal with a long body and tail, which lives in Africa and Asia

اليوم الأول

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

Word	Definition
oasis واحة	an area in the desert where you can find water
polar قطبي	describing things to do with the North or South Poles
polar bear الدب القطبي	a large, white bear which lives on the ice of the Arctic
preserved محفوظ	kept safe from being damaged or destroyed
remote بعيد	very far from cities or other places where people live
species فصائل	a group of animals, plants or birds of the same kind
stable إسطبل	a place where horses sleep
treat يعامل	behave towards someone in a certain way
wetland بيئة الأرض الرطبة	an area of land that is often flooded by water
wonder أعجوبة	something that makes you feel it is beautiful or amazing

Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر

اليوم الأول

• cut down يقطع

• (be) surrounded by محاط بـ

• It is believed يُعتقد أنّ

• give advice يعطى نصيحة

• wonders of the world عجائب العالم

• belong to ينتمي إلى / يخص

• well preserved محفوظ جيداً

• species of فصائل من

• lay eggs تضع البيض

• the list of قائمة من

• known as معروف كـ

• look after يعتنى بـ

• that's why لذلك ، لهذا السبب

• fell into يسقط في

• give directions يعطى اتجاهات

• fill ... with يملأ ... بـ

• such as مثل ، على سبيل المثال

• is/are called يُسمّى

• live on يعيش على

• hear of يسمع عن

• a piece of قطعة من

• information text نص معلومات

• on the sea shore على شاطئ البحر

• on a day trip في رحلة اليوم الواحد

• along the coast بطول الساحل

• covered by مغطى بـ

• as well as كذلك بالإضافة إلى

• hide in يختبئ في

• around the world حول العالم

• famous for مشهور بـ

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

B Grammar

Present and past simple passive

صيغة المبني للمجهول في زمن المضارع والماضي البسيط

→ Usage الاستخدام

- تستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول عندما يكون فاعل الجملة غير معروف أو غير مهم في الكلام (عندما يكون المفعول أهم من الفاعل ، التركيز على الحدث وليس من قام به) .

→ Compare قارن

- Many people visit the national park every year.
(مبني للمعلوم) (والمعنى : كثير من الناس يزورون الحديقة القومية كل عام) .
- The national park **is visited** by many people every year.
(مبني للمجهول) (والمعنى : الحديقة القومية تزار بواسطة كثير من الناس كل عام) .
- Locals **call** the lake 'The Shooting Star'.
(مبني للمعلوم) (والمعنى : إن الناس المحليين يُطلقون على البحيرة الشهاب) .
- The lake **is called** the Shooting Star by locals.
(مبني للمجهول) (والمعنى : إن البحيرة يُطلق عليها الشهاب بواسطة الناس المحليين) .
والتركيز هنا على إطلاق اسم الشهاب على البحيرة ، وليس من أطلق عليها هذا الاسم .

→ Form التكوين

- يتكون المبني للمجهول من :

Be + P.P.

على حسب زمن الجملة

التصريف الثالث من فعل الجملة

→ Present simple passive المبني للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط

am
is + (not) P.P.
are

في حالة النفي فقط

- The national park **is surrounded** by grasslands.
- Gebel Elba **isn't visited**.

→ Past simple passive المبنى للمجهول فى زمن الماضى البسيط

was
were + (not) P.P.

فى حالة النفى فقط

- The Taj Mahal **was built** by Shah Jahan.
- Hundreds of fossils **weren't found** until 2000.

→ Yes/No questions: أسئلة بمعنى (هل)

مضارع بسيط	Am / Is / Are	نائب الفاعل	P.P.	(by...)?
ماضٍ بسيط	Was / Were	(اسم أو ضمير)	التصريف الثالث	فى حالة الأهمية فقط

- Are** many cars **made** by robots in factories?
Yes, they are. No, they aren't.
- Were** many homes **built** near the river last year?
Yes, they were. No, they weren't.

→ Wh- questions: أسئلة بأداة استفهام

أداة استفهام	am / is / are	نائب الفاعل	P.P. ?
	was / were	(اسم أو ضمير)	التصريف الثالث

- What **is** the lake **called**?
- The lake **is called** the Shooting Star.
- When **was** this school **built**?
- It **was built** five years ago.

C Language Functions وظائف لغوية

→ Asking for directions السؤال عن الاتجاهات

- للسؤال عن مكان معين ، نقول :
كيف يمكنني أن أذهب إلى ؟
كيف يمكنني أن أصل إلى ؟
معذرة ، أين ؟
- وفى الإجابة (عند وصف المكان) نقول مثلاً :
Go along this road then turn right.
أذهب بطول هذا الطريق ثم انعطف يميناً .
خذ ثانياً منعطف ، إنه بجانب
You can take a taxi.
يمكنك أن تأخذ تاكسى .

→ Fact file ملف حقائق

- Where is it? أين يقع ؟
(جنوب / south of / شمال north)
What can you see? ماذا يمكنك أن ترى ؟
- We can see and

→ Talking about animal habitats التحدث عن المواطن الطبيعية للحيوانات

- What is the habitat of orangutans? ما هى بيئة إنسان الغاب ؟
- They live in the rainforest. إنها تعيش فى الغابات الممطرة .
- What is the habitat of caracals? ما هى بيئة الكاراكال ؟
- They live in the grasslands. إنها تعيش فى الأراضى العشبية .

→ Asking for clarification طلب التوضيح

- Could you say that in another way? هل يمكنك أن تقول ذلك بطريقة أخرى ؟
- Could you give me an example? هل يمكنك أن تعطينى مثالاً ؟
- When you say... do you mean... ? عندما تقول... هل تقصد... ؟

→ ... of understanding عدم الفهم

- I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean.
آسف ، لست متأكداً مما تقصده .
- I'm sorry, but I can't understand well.
آسف ، لا أستطيع الفهم جيداً .

General Exercises on [Unit 7]

اليوم الأول

1 A) Finish the following dialogue.

Mazin and Tarek are talking about the story of Black Beauty.

Mazin : Hi, Tarek. Did you read the story of Black Beauty?

Tarek : Hi, Mazin. Yes of course, It (1).....

Mazin : I agree with you. I liked it very much.

Tarek : (2)..... ?

Mazin : Yes, I like horses very much.

Tarek : Do horses feel like us?

Mazin : (3)....., so the writer uses personification.

Tarek : I'm sorry, (4)..... ?

Mazin : The writer calls the horses 'I' and 'she' not 'it'.

Tarek : (5).....

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

B) Finish the following dialogue.

A tourist is asking a man about the way to the Egyptian Museum.

Tourist : Excuse me, could you tell me the way to the Egyptian Museum?

Man : Sure, (1).....

Tourist : Is it far from here?

Man : (2).....

Tourist : How long will it take if I take a taxi?

Man : (3).....

Tourist : 15 minutes! I think you are right. I should take a taxi.

Man : Have a nice time. (4)..... ?

Tourist : No, thank you.

Man : (5).....

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع



2 A) Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

visit - natural - palm - visited - shops - unnatural

The Kharga Oasis is surrounded by desert, far from the River Nile. It is (1)..... by more and more tourists every year. Hundreds of date (2)..... trees are grown here. The dates are sold in many (3)..... in the area. The Kharga Oasis is one of Egypt's (4)..... wonders.

B) Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

found - fossils - find - species - whales - north

The Fayoum Depression is an area of desert, southwest of Cairo. Many ancient (1)..... are often found here. But the (2)..... of animal fossils might surprise you: crocodiles, turtles and (3)..... . The most amazing fossils are the whale fossils. At Wadi al-Hitan, hundreds of fossils of ancient whales were (4)..... by scientists in 1902.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions.

The caracal is a beautiful gold-coloured wild cat with large ears. Caracals are not very big. They grow to about 90 centimetres long. Caracals' large ears help them to hear very well. They also have a lot of fur on their feet, which makes it difficult for other animals to hear them when they are trying to catch them. Caracals can also jump very high and climb trees.

Caracals are found in many places in Africa and in the Middle East. They live in the deserts, but also in grasslands and forests. Caracals are usually active during the night and most live alone.

Mother caracals often live in holes that are made by other animals. Caracals usually have between three and six babies. Caracals catch and eat many animals, including mongooses, birds and rabbits.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is '.....'.
a) A pet animal b) A wild animal
c) A farm animal d) A lazy animal
- The underlined word 'They' refers to '.....'.
a) trees b) feet c) caracals d) places
- The underlined phrase 'a beautiful gold-coloured' describes the of caracals.
a) skills b) food c) lifestyle d) appearance

B. Answer the following questions:

- Is a caracal a pet animal? Why?/Why not?
- Summarise the third paragraph in one sentence.
- How can caracals adapt to living in the desert?

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A is the remains of animals or plants that lived in the past.
a) species b) habitat c) fossil d) length
- You shouldn't be cruel to people. The antonym of 'cruel' is
a) unkind b) kind c) remote d) busy
- I can't answer the question; it is very hard. The synonym of 'hard' is
a) difficult b) easy c) cool d) old
- To form the verb from the noun 'danger', we add the prefix
a) un- b) in- c) en- d) im-



5. To form the noun from the verb 'invite', we add the suffix

- a) -ment b) -ly c) -ance d) -ation

6. Alexandria is located by the sea. It is a city.

- a) normal b) coastal c) natural d) formal

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. To form the adjective from the noun 'coast', we add the suffix

- a) -ful b) -al c) -ness d) -er

2. A/An is an area in the desert where you can find water and palm trees.

- a) wetland b) rainforest c) oasis d) farm

3. To get the opposite of the adjective 'natural', we add the prefix

- a) un- b) in- c) re- d) im-

4. Mohamed Salah is a famous footballer. The antonym of 'famous' is

- a) known b) unknown c) popular d) well-known

5. My grandpa is very old, but he is active. The synonym of 'active' is

- a) lazy b) old c) energetic d) beautiful

6. My friend takes an hour to go home after school. He lives from school.

- a) near b) far c) next to d) opposite

5 A) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Many fridges are (making) in Egypt every year.


2. This school was (build) in 2005.

3. Cotton (grown) in the Nile Delta.

4. Last year, they (were built) many new homes.

5. Squash (doesn't) played by many students.

B) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

- 
1. That lake (formed) hundreds of years ago.
2. Thousands of fish (catch) from the Red Sea every day.
3. These trees (planted) by schoolboys last year.
4. Our beaches are (visit) by thousands of tourists every year.
5. Was this book (write) in 1998?

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

'A review of different habitats in Egypt'

Answers

Day 1 - Unit 7

1 Finish the following dialogue.

- A)** 1. is very interesting.
2. Do you like horses?
3. Yes, they do.
4. what do you mean?
5. Oh! I understand now.

- B)** 1. , but I think you should take a taxi.
2. Yes, I think so.
3. It will take 15 minutes.
4. Do you want anything else?
5. You're welcome.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

- A)** 1. visited 2. palm
3. shops 4. natural
B) 1. fossils 2. species
3. whales 4. found

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct from a, b, c or d:

1. b) A wild animal
2. c) caracals
3. d) appearance

B) Answer the following questions:

1. No, it isn't. Because it lives in the desert and eats many animals.
2. Caracals often live in holes and eat animals and birds.
3. They live in holes and they are active during the night.

4 Choose the correct from a, b, c or d:

- A)** 1. c) fossil 2. b) kind
3. a) difficult 4. c) en-
5. d) -ation 6. b) coastal
B) 1. b) -al 2. c) oasis
3. a) un- 4. b) unknown
5. c) energetic 6. b) far

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- A)** 1. made 2. built
3. is grown 4. built
5. isn't
B) 1. was formed 2. are caught
3. were planted 4. visited
5. written

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

'A review of different habitats in Egypt'

I live in Egypt. It's a great country. It has lots of different habitats. We have an agriculture habitat. It's near the Nile. Farmers work there to keep cows and other farm animals. We also have a desert habitat. There isn't much water there. There aren't many plants. It's very hot in summer and very cold in winter. Some animals are found there, like camels, foxes and caracals. We also have a coastal habitat. It's next to the sea. The weather is fine there. Animals like turtles, whales and dolphins live in the sea. Animals usually adapt to living in the different habitats in Egypt. Life is amazing here. I'm very proud of my country.

UNIT 8: Protecting our planet

A Vocabulary

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	cartridge	الحبارة ، خرطوشة الحبر
environmental	بيئي	ink	حبر
serious	خطير ، جاد	weaving	نسيج
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	traditional	تقليدي
melting ice	ذوبان الثلج	weavers	نَساجون
landfill site	مكان جمع النفايات	loom	نول
absorb(-ed)	يمتص	thread	خيوط
seagrass	أعشاب البحر	fabric	قماش
volunteer	متطوع	Arctic	القارة القطبية الشمالية
climate change	تغير المناخ	Antarctic	القارة القطبية الجنوبية
recycling	إعادة التصنيع	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
solution	حل	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
planet	كوكب	waste(-d)	يفقد ، يهدر ، مخلفات
flood	فيضان	collect(-ed)	يجمع
drought	جفاف	transport	وسائل النقل (المواصلات)
recycle(-d)	يُعيد تصنيع	discussion	مناقشة
greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحراري	materials	مواد خام
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	handbag	حقيبة يد
fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري	sunglasses	نظارة شمس
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	machine	آلة
renewable energy	الطاقة المتجددة	damage	تلف
wind power	طاقة الرياح	farming	زراعة
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	wool	صوف
electric equipment	آلات كهربائية	jewellery	مجوهرات
printer	طابعة	bricks	طوب
fail(-ed)	يفشل	avoid(-ed)	يتجنب

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	Synonym	Antonym
traditional	تقليدي	modern
pass	يجتاز / ينجح في	fail
avoid	يتجنب	face
wrong	خطأ	right
broken	مكسور	unbroken
below	تحت ، أسفل	above
safe	آمن	dangerous
begin	يبدأ	finish
attractive	جذاب	unattractive
natural	طبيعي	unnatural

Prefixes and Suffixes بادئات ولاحقات

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
re-	do again يقوم بالفعل مرة أخرى	cycle → recycle use → reuse
dis-	opposite عكس المعنى	appear → disappear
non-	not نفي	renewable → non-renewable

Suffix	Parts of speech	Examples
-ous	noun → adjective	danger → dangerous
-al	noun → adjective	tradition → traditional environment → environmental electricity → electrical
-ion	verb → noun	pollute → pollution
-er	verb → noun	weave → weaver speak → speaker
-ive	verb → adjective	attract → attractive
-y	noun → adjective	wind → windy

Important Definitions تعريفات هامة

Word	Definition
absorb يمتص	take in liquid or gases through a surface
avoid يتجنب	stay away from someone or something
carbon dioxide ثاني أكسيد الكربون	a gas which we breathe out and which is produced by burning fossil fuels
climate change التغير المناخي	how the Earth's weather changes
fabric قماش	cloth or material which can be used to make clothes, bags, etc.
farming الزراعة	the business of growing crops and looking after animals for food
fossil fuel الوقود الحفري	natural material such as petrol and oil that you can burn for energy
greenhouse gas غاز الاحتباس الحراري	a gas in the air such as carbon dioxide which can cause global warming
ink حبر	a liquid used in pens or printers for writing or drawing
keep يظل ، يبقى	continue doing or do again and again
landfill site مكان جمع القمامة	a place where rubbish is taken to be buried under the ground
loom النول	a machine used for weaving

اليوم الأول

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

Word	Definition
methane غاز الميثان	a natural gas often produced by animals and dead plants
printer cartridge حبرة ، خرطوشة الحبر	a piece of plastic which contains and supplies ink for a printer
renewable energy الطاقة المتجددة	natural energy that doesn't disappear or burn when you use it
seagrass أعشاب بحرية	a plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast
slow down يخفض السرعة	reduce how fast something goes
solar energy الطاقة الشمسية	energy from the sun
thread خيوط	a long piece of cotton, silk, .. etc. which people use to sew or make clothes
weaver النَّسَّاج	a person who makes cloth by weaving
weaving النسيج	the art of making cloth by crossing threads using a special machine
melting ice ذوبان الثلج	a problem in the Arctic and Antarctic caused by global warming

Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر

- rubbish in landfill sites القمامة فى أماكن جمع النفايات
- forms of renewable energy أشكال الطاقة المتجددة
- advantages to solar farms مميزات محطات الطاقة الشمسية
- turn off the lights يطفئ الأتوار
- pay for يدفع ثمنًا لـ
- find out يكتشف ، يجد معلومات عن ...
- slow down climate change يبطئ التغير المناخى
- ask for help يطلب المساعدة
- get into the sea يدخل فى البحر
- give reason يعطى سببًا
- to conclude خلاصة القول
- good for مفيد لـ
- cut down trees يقطع الأشجار
- breathe in يتنفس
- breathe out يخرج الزفير
- connected to موصل بـ
- know how to يعرف كيف يقوم بـ
- plastic football field ملعب نجيل صناعى
- find a way of يجد طريقة لـ
- save energy يوفر الطاقة
- in the last 100 year فى المائة عام الماضية
- avoid cutting down forests يتجنب قطع الغابات
- trees absorb carbon dioxide الأشجار تمتص ثانى أكسيد الكربون

B Grammar

First conditional 'If'

الحالة الشرطية الأولى من 'If'

→ Use: استخدامها

- تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتعبير عن أشياء محتملة الحدوث في المستقبل .
- If we **recycle** our rubbish, our environment **will be** cleaner.

→ Form: تكوينها

If	+	مضارع بسيط (فعل الشرط)	→	will can may should	+	مصدر (جواب الشرط)
----	---	-----------------------------	---	------------------------------	---	------------------------

- If she **comes** early, we **may play** chess.
- لاحظ أنه يمكننا أن نبدل ترتيب الجملتين فنبداً بجواب الشرط ثم نضع (if) وبعدها فعل الشرط :
- We **can meet** Ali **if we go** to the party.
- لاحظ أنه يمكننا أن نستخدم (فعل أمر) في جواب الشرط كما يلي :
- **If** you **want** to get high marks, **study** hard.

(=you should study hard.)

هنا (should) تستخدم للتعبير عن النصيحة

• وفي حالة الاستفهام نقول مثلاً :

- **If** you **have** a lot of money, **will** you **buy** a car?
- **If** you **have** a lot of money, what **will** you **do**?

Verbs + to or -ing

→ Verbs followed by → (to + inf.)

- هناك أفعال يأتى بعدها (مصدر + to) ، مثل :

need	يحتاج	hope	يأمل
plan	يخطط	agree	يوافق
choose	يختار	learn	يتعلم
decide	يقرر	manage	يتمكن ، ينجح
fail	يفشل	promise	يعد
want	يريد	offer	يعرض

Examples:

- We **need to** use more renewable energy.
- You can **choose to** recycle plastic bottles.

→ Verbs followed by → (v. + ing)

- وهناك أفعال يأتى بعدها (v. + ing) ، مثل :

avoid
keep
enjoy
finish
dislike

يتجنب
يستمر ، يواصل
يستمتع
يُنهى
يكره

practise
mind
suggest
recommend
imagine

يتدرب على
يمانع
يقترح
يوصى بـ ، يقترح
يتخيل

Examples:

- You should **avoid sitting** on the wall.
- Do you **enjoy playing** the piano?

→ Note:

- لاحظ أن هناك أفعال يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) أو (v + ing) دون اختلاف فى المعنى ،
مثل :

(يبدأ / begin / يكره / hate / يحب / love / يفضل / prefer / يحب / like)

- I **like to eat** fish.
- I **like eating** fish.

- لاحظ أن الأفعال (like / love / prefer) يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) إذا جاء قبلها
(would) :

would (= -'d) } like
love
prefer } مصدر الفعل + to

- I'd **like to eat** fish.
- She **would prefer to play** tennis.

• تذكر أن الفعلين (suggest / recommend) يأتي بعدها إحدى الصيغتين :

suggest } + $\begin{cases} v + ing \\ \text{مصدر الفعل} + \text{فاعل} + \text{that} \end{cases}$

- I **suggest playing** tennis.
- I **suggest that we play** tennis.
- He **recommended visiting** the zoo.
- He **recommended that she visit** the zoo.

C Language Functions وظائف لغوية

→ Asking about and giving opinions السؤال عن الرأي والتعبير عنه

• للسؤال عن الرأي نستخدم :

- What's your opinion about / of? ما رأيك في؟
- What do you think of? ما رأيك في؟
- What do you think of air pollution? ما رأيك في تلوث الهواء؟
- What is your opinion about recycling? ما رأيك في إعادة التصنيع؟

• ولإعطاء الرأي نستخدم :

- In my opinion في رأيي
- I think أعتقد
- In my opinion, air pollution is very dangerous.
- I think recycling is a good way to save energy.

→ Giving a speech إعطاء (إلقاء) حديث

- Today, I'm going to talk about اليوم سوف أتكلم عن
- I'd like to start by saying أريد أن أبدأ بقول
- To begin with أول ما أبدأ به هو
- In the next part of my speech, I'd like to في الجزء الثاني من حديثي أود أن
- I'd like to finish by saying أود أن أنهي حديثي بقول

General Exercises on [Unit 8]

اليوم الأول

1 A) Finish the following dialogue.

Omar is talking to his science teacher Mr Ali about recycling.

Omar : Good morning, Mr Ali. May I ask you some questions, please?

Mr Ali : Good morning, Omar. Sure. (1)..... ?

Omar : (2)..... ?

Mr Ali : Recycling means treating used things to use them again.

Omar : Can you give me an example?

Mr Ali : Of course. (3).....

Omar : I think it is a good way to save energy.

Mr Ali : (4)..... We can also reduce pollution.

Omar : That's right. (5).....

Mr Ali : You're welcome.

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

B) Finish the following dialogue.

Sara is phoning Mai to invite her to her sister's wedding.

Sara : Hello, Mai. How are you?

Mai : Hello, Sara. (1).....

Sara : I'd like to invite you to my sister's wedding.

Mai : Really! (2)..... ! When will it be?

Sara : (3).....

Mai : (4)..... ?

Sara : Yes, I invited all our friends.

Mai : I hope it will be a nice party.

Sara : Thank you, Mai. (5)..... ?

Mai : Yes, sure. I will come.

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع



2 A) Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

equipment - building - renewable - build -
fossil - non-renewable

Buildings cause 6% of our greenhouse gases. If we keep (1)..... houses in the same way, global warming will continue. I think we should decide to build houses that need to use less electricity from (2)..... fuels. We can do this by planning to build houses that use (3)..... energy. We should avoid leaving our electrical (4)..... on when we are not using it.

B) Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

boxes - put - cartridges - putting - ink - tables

Our class decided to start a school recycling project. We have computers and printers in our school. We throw away the printer (1)..... with the school rubbish. But the (2)..... inside the printer cartridges is very bad for the environment. We asked all the school students and teachers to (3)..... the printer cartridges in the recycling (4)..... and we will take these boxes to the recycling centre.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions.

Trees are beautiful and useful gifts of nature. They are great friends of man. Trees give us flowers, fruits, bamboo, a fuel ..etc. We can rest under the shade of a tree. We get wood from trees to make furniture, doors, windows, etc. We also get paper, rubber, herbs and medicine plants from trees.

Trees are also very important to prevent desertification. They protect us from the bad weather.

Trees are the main solution to the problem of global warming, which will destroy our life on earth. Trees absorb carbon dioxide gas and give us oxygen which we breathe in, so without them we may die.

Governments and all people should help to stop cutting down forests all over the world. We should encourage all people to plant more trees in streets, parks and everywhere to face the great expected danger which will destroy the whole world.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The best title of the passage is '.....'.
 a) The problem of desertification
 b) Trees are very important
 c) Flowers and fruit
 d) The problem of global warming
- The underlined word 'They' refers to
 a) nature b) people c) trees d) flowers
- We can make paper from the of trees.
 a) flowers b) fruit c) herbs d) wood

B. Answer the following questions:

- How can governments stop cutting down trees?
- Do you think it is difficult to plant more trees? Why?/Why not?
- Summarise the first paragraph of the passage in one sentence.



4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. happens when people cut down all the trees in an area.

a) Pollution

b) Flood

c) Deforestation

d) Chemical

2. You should avoid playing with bad boys. The synonym of 'avoid' is '.....'.

a) face

b) start

c) live

d) stop

3. To form the adjective from the noun 'danger', we add the suffix

a) -al

b) -ive

c) -ous

d) -ion

4. People still use traditional ways of energy. The antonym of 'traditional' is '.....'.

a) modern

b) ancient

c) easy

d) dangerous

5. To get the opposite meaning of the verb 'appear', we add the prefix

a) re-

b) dis-

c) un-

d) in-

6. Animals that live in wetland habitat are able to live in, too.

a) deserts

b) mountains

c) water

d) cities

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A is a machine used for weaving.

a) remote

b) loom

c) weaver

d) fabric

2. My sister succeeded in her English exam with high marks. The synonym of 'succeeded in' is

a) passed

b) failed

c) helped

d) faced

3. To form the noun from the verb 'pollute', we add the suffix

a) -ous

b) -al

c) -y

d) -ion

4. Plants die if you don't water it. The antonym of 'die' is

a) pass

b) start

c) avoid

d) live

5. To get the opposite of the adjective 'renewable', we add the prefix

a) re-

b) dis-

c) non-

d) in-

6. The problem in the Arctic and Antarctic caused by global warming is called

a) air pollution

b) melting ice

c) deforestation

d) drought

5 A) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Our environment will be cleaner if we (recycled) our rubbish.

2. If we burn plastic rubbish, we (pollute) the air.

3. What (you will) do if you don't pass your exam this year?

4. The bird keeps (make) a loud noise.

5. My family has decided (going) to Jordan next year.

B) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. We all enjoy (to have) new mobile phones.

2. Miss Huda wants (starting) a recycling project at school.



اليوم الأول

3. If families (collects) their rubbish, we will pay them for doing so.

4. Climate change will get worse if we (didn't) take action now.

5. If you have much money, (would) you buy a car?

اليوم الثاني

6 Write **ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110)** words on the following:

'A biography of a famous person you admire'

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

Answers

Day 2 - Unit 8

1 Finish the following dialogue.

- A)** 1. How can I help you?
2. What does recycling mean?
3. We can recycle paper and plastic to use them again.
4. That's right.
5. Thank you very much.
- B)** 1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. Congratulations!
3. It will be next Thursday.
4. Did you invite our friends?
5. Will you join us?

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

- A)** 1. building 2. fossil
3. renewable 4. equipment
- B)** 1. cartridges 2. ink
3. put 4. boxes

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Trees are very important.
2. c) trees
3. d) wood

B) Answer the following questions:

1. They should encourage all people to plant more trees in streets, parks and everywhere.
2. No, I don't think so. Because we have a fertile soil in Egypt. We also have the River Nile.
3. Trees are useful gifts of nature.

4 Choose the correct from a, b, c or d:

- A)** 1. c) Deforestation
2. d) stop 3. c) -ous
4. a) modern 5. b) dis-
6. c) water
- B)** 1. b) loom 2. a) passed
3. d) -ion 4. d) live
5. c) non-
6. b) melting ice

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- A)** 1. recycle 2. will pollute
3. will you 4. making
5. to go
- B)** 1. having 2. to start
3. collect 4. don't
5. will

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

'A biography of a famous person you admire'

Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet in Egypt. He was born in 1936 in Damietta. He went to a nearby elementary school. He went to the local library at a very early age. He was able to read many books in the Arabic language. He went to Cairo University and graduated from the Faculty of Dar Al-Ulum in 1956. He worked as a radio presenter and as a TV presenter, too. He presented many programmes like 'Our Beautiful Language' and 'Cultural Evening'. In his programmes, he always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and its rich literature. He was called the guardian of the Arabic language. He won the Nile Prize for Literature in 2016. I admire him very much. When I grow up, I want to be a radio presenter like him.



UNIT 9: Build a greener world

A Vocabulary

sustainable	مستدام
products	منتجات
shopping bag	حقيبة التسوق
carbon footprints	انبعاثات كربونية
bamboo	شجر الخيزران ، بامبو
light bulb	مصباح إضاءة
energy saving	موفر للطاقة
rechargeable	يمكن إعادة شحنه
battery	بطارية
reusable	يمكن إعادة استخدامه
toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان
sea level	مستوى سطح البحر
use(-d)	يستخدم
mangrove	شجر المانجروف (استوائية)
community	مجتمع
seedlings	شتلات ، نباتات صغيرة
rising	متزايد
shop window	قائرينة محل
web page	صفحة على الإنترنت
create(-d)	ينشئ ، يخلق
plug	فيشة
hairbrush	فرشاة شعر
hieroglyphics	اللغة الهيروغليفية
field	حقل ، مجال
iron	حديد
plant(-ed)	يزرع
destroy(-ed)	يدمر

produce(-d)	ينتج
frightened	خائف ، مرعوب
power	طاقة
surprised	مدهش
wrong	خطأ
waste(-d)	يهدر ، يضيع
ability	قدرة
interrupt(-ed)	يقاطع
air conditioning	نظام تكييف الهواء
remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بُعد
electric	كهربائي (يعمل بالكهرباء)
owner	مالك
personally	شخصيًا
totally	تمامًا (كليًا)
farmland	أرض زراعية
solar panels	لوحات شمسية
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح
water wheel	ساقية (مياه)
earthquake	زلزال
repair(-ed)	يُصلح
region	إقليم (منطقة)
permission	إذن ، تصريح
source	مصدر
landscape	مناظر طبيعية
living thing	كائن حي
promise(-d)	يَعِد
agree(-d)	يوافق

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	Synonym	Antonym
sustainable مستدام	renewable	unsustainable غير مستدام
little صغير السن	young	old كبير السن ، عجوز
save يوفر	keep	waste يضيع
easy سهل	simple	difficult صعب
make يصنع ، يولد كهرباء	produce	destroy يدمر
cheap رخيص	inexpensive	expensive غالي الثمن
enormous ضخم ، كبير الحجم	huge/big	tiny/small صغير الحجم
repair يصلح	fix	damage يتلف
agree يوافق	accept	refuse/disagree يرفض
serious خطير	dangerous	safe آمن
beautiful جميل	lovely	ugly قبيح
pros مزايا	advantages	cons/disadvantages عيوب
possible ممكن	probable	impossible مستحيل
inside بالداخل	indoors	outside بالخارج

بادئات ولاحقات Prefixes and Suffixes

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
re-	done again يمكن إعادة فعله	usable → reusable
un-	opposite عكس المعنى	usual → unusual
in-	opposite عكس المعنى	expensive → inexpensive
dis-	opposite عكس المعنى	agree → disagree
Suffix	Parts of speech	Examples
-able	verb → adjective	sustain → sustainable renew → renewable
-ing	verb → adjective	live → living grow → growing
-ing	verb → noun	fish → fishing farm → farming save → saving
-ling	noun → noun ↓ (small/young)	seed → seedling
-al	noun → adjective	electricity → electrical environment → environmental
-er	noun → noun ↓ (job)	work → worker

Important Definitions تعريفات هامة

Word	Definition
air conditioning تكييف الهواء	a machine that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm
bamboo cup كوب بامبو (من الخيزران)	a cup made from a tall, strong grass
battery بطارية	something that gives power to a machine, toy, car, .. etc.
desertification التصحّر	changing an area into desert
destroy يدمر	damage something so badly that you can't repair it
energy-saving light bulb مصباح موفر للطاقة	a glass object that uses less electricity than usual to give light
initiative مبادرة	something to improve a difficult situation
interrupt يقاطع	speak to stop someone else from speaking
landscape منظر طبيعي	a view showing an area of land
light bulb مصباح كهربائي	a glass object that you put in lights, which changes electricity into light
mangrove tree شجرة المانجروف (استوائى)	a small tree with roots above the ground, which grows in or near the coast or rivers
rechargeable battery بطارية يعاد شحنها	something that gives power to a machine, toy, car, etc. and which you can continue to add energy to, so they continue to work

اليوم الأول

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

Word	Definition
region إقليم ، منطقة	an area of a country
remote control جهاز تحكم عن بُعد	a machine that you can control from far away
reusable يمكن إعادة استخدامه	able to be used again
rising sea level ارتفاع مستوى سطح البحر	when the sea becomes higher because climate change melts the ice at the Poles
seedling شتلة	a small plant which has started to grow from a seed
solar farm محطة طاقة شمسية	an area with many solar panels that provides electricity
source مصدر	a person, thing or place that gives information
sustainable مستدام	causing little or no damage to the environment

Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر

اليوم الأول

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

- energy-saving light bulb مصباح موفر للطاقة
- along the coast بطول الساحل
- for many years لسنوات عديدة
- look like يشبه
- sea level مستوى سطح البحر
- green electricity كهرباء نظيفة صديقة للبيئة
- I totally disagree لا أتفق تمامًا
- Don't interrupt لا تقاطع
- have a plan لديه خطة
- once more مرة أخرى
- an inexpensive way of طريقة غير مكلفة لـ
- go shopping يذهب للتسوق
- less often أقل اعتيادًا
- easy to understand سهل استيعابه
- ask for permission يطلب إذنًا
- worried about قلق بشأن
- find an answer يجد حلًا لـ
- get used to معتاد على
- give up يقلع عن ، يتخلى عن
- do well يؤدي جيدًا
- ski down يتزلج لأسفل
- In my opinion في رأيي
- produce money for تجلب المال لـ
- protect... from يحمي... من
- made from مصنوع من
- turn off يطفى
- provide... for يقدم ... لـ
- come from يأتي من
- set up يؤسس ، ينشئ
- compare... with يُقارن... بـ

B Grammar

used to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- تستخدم صيغة (used to) للتعبير عن عادات كانت تحدث في الماضي ولكنها لم تعد تحدث الآن.

- Two years ago, he **used to ride** a bike. (But now he doesn't).

[والمعنى : منذ عامين اعتاد أن يركب الدراجة (ولكنه الآن لا يفعل) .]

→ Affirmative: الإثبات

used to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- Heba **used to be fat** when she was young. (Now she isn't fat)
- Ali **used to play** in the street when he was young.
(Now he doesn't play)

→ Interrogative: الاستفهام

Did + فاعل + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟

- **Did** Ali **use to play** in the street?

؟ مصدر الفعل . inf. + فاعل + did + أداة الاستفهام

- **What** things **did** you **use to do** when you were young?

→ Negative: النفي

didn't use to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- My father **didn't use to have** a car. (Now he does)

If (Second Conditional)

الحالة الشرطية الثانية باستخدام If

→ Use: الاستخدام

١ - تستخدم الحالة الثانية للجمل الشرطية للتعبير عن مواقف تخيلية أو غير محتملة الحدوث في الوقت الحاضر (غير متوقع حدوثها)، مثل:

- If I **found** a lot of money, I **would call** the police.

If I **were** taller, I **would be** good at basketball.

٢ - تستخدم لإعطاء النصيحة، كما يلي:

If I were you, I'd + inf. مصدر الفعل

- If I **were you**, I'd **see** a doctor. لو كنت مكانك لذهبت للطبيب.
- لاحظ أنه يمكن أن تستخدم (were) مع جميع الضمائر مفردة أو جمعًا في هذه القاعدة.

→ Form: التكوين

If	+	Past simple ماضٍ بسيط	could would might	مصدر الفعل (not) + inf.
----	---	--------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------

- If we **had** more time, we **would visit** our cousins in the village.
- If we **lived** in Hurghada, we **could go** to the beach every week.
- If there **were** more mangrove trees, there **would be** fewer floods.

ويمكن استخدام (if) بين الجملتين كما يلي:

ماضٍ بسيط + if → مصدر الفعل would + inf.

- We **would have** fewer storms if climate change **stopped**.

→ More Examples: أمثلة إضافية

- If he **played** badly, he **wouldn't win** the match.
- If he **didn't play** well, he **wouldn't win** the match.
- If I **were** you, I'd **study** for the exams.
- If I **were** you, I **wouldn't waste** any time.

C Language Functions وظائف لغوية

الرد على الآراء Responding to opinions

→ Agreeing الموافقة

• عند الموافقة على رأى نقول :

I agree with you.

أتفق معك .

I totally agree with you.

أتفق معك تمامًا .

I agree that

أتفق فى أن

→ Disagreeing عدم الموافقة

• عند رفض رأى نقول :

I disagree with you.

لا أتفق معك .

I don't agree that

لا أتفق فى أن

I totally disagree that

لا أتفق تمامًا فى أن

I agree with you. The solar panels are useful

أتفق معك فى أن الألواح الشمسية مفيدة .

I don't agree that we should build solar farms in the country.

لا أتفق معك فى أننا يجب أن نبني محطات الطاقة الشمسية فى الريف .

→ Asking for permission طلب إذن

Can I + inf. مصدر الفعل , please?

هل يمكننى أن؟

May I + inf. مصدر الفعل , please?

هل يمكننى أن؟

May I go out, please?

هل يمكننى أن أذهب للخارج من فضلك ؟

Can I say something, please?

هل يمكننى أن أقول شيئًا من فضلك ؟

وفى الرد نقول :

- Yes, Sure, Of course.

نعم ، بالتأكيد ، بالطبع . (للموافقة)

- No, you can't.

لا ، لا تستطيع . (للرفض)

General Exercises on [Unit 9]

اليوم الأول

1 A) Finish the following dialogue.

Nader is talking to his friend Maher about his last mid-year holiday.

Maher: Hello, Nader. How are you?

Nader: Hello, Maher. I'm fine, thanks.

Maher: Nader, (1).....?

Nader: I spent it in Aswan.

Maher: Great! Aswan is a historic city.

Nader: (2)....., there is much to do there.

Maher: (3).....?

Nader: I visited many places there like (4).....

Maher: The High Dam! Who did you go with?

Nader: (5)..... . It was a fantastic journey.

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

B) Finish the following dialogue.

Heba is asking her brother Hany to lend her some money to buy a present for her mother on Mother's Day.

Heba: Hany, could you do me a favour?

Hany: Sure, (1).....?

Heba: (2).....

Hany: (3).....?

Heba: Because I want to buy a present for my mother.

Hany: But I think you saved enough money.

Heba: No, (4)..... . The present costs 150 pounds.

Hany: How much do you need?

Heba: (5).....

Hany: OK, I will lend you the money.

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع



2 A) Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

losing - crops - lose - levels - seawater - energy

Climate change means that many countries have more floods now because of rising sea (1)..... . Most trees and plants can't live in (2)..... . When seawater comes onto farms, the salt in the water kills the (3)..... and farmers can't grow anything for many years. So, people (4)..... their farms and their homes.

B) Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

won't - warming - Solar - wouldn't - clean - dirty

The whole world is facing a serious problem nowadays. It is the problem of global (1)..... . All countries try to solve the problem. (2)..... energy is a good way. If people use it in their homes, there (3)..... be any danger because it is (4)..... and doesn't cause any pollution.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions.

'Shark!' It's a word that frightened swimmers all over the world. Many people think the sea is full of dangerous sharks. They think that all sharks want to kill them.

But most kinds of sharks never attack people. There are more than 350 different kinds of sharks. Only about four kinds are very dangerous to people. They are the white pointer, the tiger shark, the bull shark and the white tip.

Sharks eat fish and other sea animals. They find their food by seeing it, hearing it and smelling it. They can hear very well in the water and they can smell food hundreds of metres away.

It is easy to understand why people are so frightened of sharks. But they don't attack people very often. There are only about seventy-five shark attacks in the world each year. And only about ten people are killed by sharks. But each year, people kill millions of sharks.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The best title of the passage is '.....'.
a) Kinds of marks b) Food of sharks
c) Sharks d) Swimmers
- The underlined word 'They' refers to
a) sharks b) people c) swimmers d) animals
- There are more than kinds of sharks in the world.
a) 15 b) 10 c) 1,000,000 d) 350

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why do people think that all sharks will kill them?
- Summarise the third paragraph in one sentence.
- Do you think that sharks are dangerous to people? Why? / Why not?

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- are plants which we grow on farms.
a) Batteries b) Energies c) Crops d) Floods
- This is a beautiful flower. The synonym of 'beautiful' is '.....'.
a) lovely b) ugly c) easy d) dangerous
- One advantage of solar energy is that it is very clean. The antonym of 'advantages' is '.....'.
a) cons b) pros c) coins d) cans
- We want to use this machine again. 'Use again' can be replaced by
a) rewrite b) redo c) reuse d) cycle



5. We can get an adjective from the verb 'live' by adding

- a) -er b) -ful c) -ble d) -ing

6. Solar energy can be used again and again. It is

- a) dangerous b) sustainable c) growing d) farming

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. is an area with many solar panels that provides electricity.

- a) Solar energy b) Solar farm
c) Wind farm d) Landfill

2. I don't have much money, so I will buy a cheap present. The synonym of 'cheap' is '.....'.

- a) expensive b) wonderful
c) ugly d) inexpensive

3. Chess is an inside game. The antonym of 'inside' is '.....'.

- a) indoor b) unhappy c) outside d) unusual

4. We can get a noun from the verb 'work' by adding the suffix '.....'.

- a) -er b) -ful c) -ness d) -ment

5. To get the opposite from the verb 'agree', we add the prefix '.....'.

- a) un- b) in- c) dis- d) im-

6. Our flat is very hot in summer, we need to repair the

- a) air conditioning b) wind turbine
c) remote control d) greenhouse

5 A) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. If Hamdi were taller, he (will) be very good at basketball.

2. My grandparents (use) to live on a farm.

3. What would you stop eating if you (want) to be healthy?

4. Did you (used) to travel to Alex?

5. He used to smoke. Now he (don't).

B) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. If I (have) more time, I would read.

2. Ali (not use) to play in the street when he was young.

3. (Will) you visit me if you were free?

4. Dad used to (running) in the morning 10 years ago.

5. I used to sleep late. Now I (didn't).

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

'A review of pollution problem'

Answers

Day 3 - Unit 9

1 Finish the following dialogue.

- A)** 1. Where did you spend your holiday?
2. Of course,
3. What places did you visit there?
4. the High Dam.
5. I went with my family.
- B)** 1. What do you want?
2. I want to borrow some money from you.
3. Why do you need the money?
4. it isn't enough.
5. Fifty pounds.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

- A)** 1. levels 2. seawater
3. crops 4. lose
- B)** 1. warming 2. Solar
3. won't 4. clean

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) Sharks
2. b) people
3. d) 350

B) Answer the following questions:

1. Because sharks are dangerous.
2. Sharks eat fish and other sea animals, which they see, hear or smell hundreds of metres away.
3. Yes, because they attack and kill people.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A)** 1. c) Crops 2. a) lovely
3. a) cons 4. c) reuse
5. d) -ing 6. b) sustainable
- B)** 1. b) Solar farm
2. d) inexpensive 3. c) outside
4. a) -er 5. c) dis-
6. a) air conditioning

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- A)** 1. would 2. used
3. wanted 4. use
5. doesn't
- B)** 1. had 2. didn't use
3. Would 4. run
5. don't

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

'A review of pollution problem'

Pollution is a dangerous problem in our modern world. It is the addition of unwanted substances into the environment which can damage our planet. There are four main types of pollution. We have water pollution, air pollution, soil pollution and noise pollution. All these kinds come from our careless activities in the environment. We throw rubbish in the water. This kills the sea creatures and causes water pollution. The smoke from factories and burning some materials causes air pollution. Pollution is also caused when vehicles release smoke into the atmosphere and make it difficult to breathe for all organisms. Soil pollution is caused by throwing our waste into landfills. Noise pollution is not visible, but it can damage our ears. We should face pollution problem seriously.

UNIT 10: To space and back

A Vocabulary

event	حَدَث	signal	إشارة
space station	محطة فضاء	receiver	مستقبل (جهاز استقبال)
astronaut	رائد فضاء	helmet	خوذة
telescope	تليسكوب	storm	عاصفة
space	الفضاء	braces	تقويم الأسنان
satellite	قمر صناعي	sensor	مستشعر ، مجس
international	دولي	wireless	لا سلكي
astronomer	عالم فضاء	trainers	حذاء التدريب
prize-winning	حائز على جائزة	continent	قارة
NASA	وكالة (ناسا) للفضاء	in vain	بلا فائدة
solution	حل	grain	حبوب (قمح مثلاً)
scientist	عالم	blow	تهبُّ (الرياح)
space science	علم الفضاء	fellow	رفيق ، صاحب
jets (of air)	نفاثات الهواء	toiler	كادح
recycle(-d)	يعيد تصنيع	unsuccessful	غير ناجح
graduate(-d)	يتخرج	spacecraft	مركبة فضائية
teaching assistant	معيد (أستاذ مساعد)	planetarium	القبة السماوية
researcher	باحث	exhibition	معرض
technology	تكنولوجيا	explore(-d)	يستكشف
gravity	الجاذبية الأرضية	achievement	إنجاز
flood(-ed)	يفيض ، يغمر	asteroid	كُويكب (كوكب صغير)
orbit(-ed)	يدور حول ...	land(-ed)	يهبط
publish(-ed)	ينشر كتاباً	back(-ed)	يرجع ، يعود
lens	عدسة	retire(-d)	يتقاعد (يُحال للمعاش)
solar system	النظام الشمسي	poem	قصيدة شعرية
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	verse	بيت شعر ، مقطع شعري
discovery	اكتشاف	rhyme	يتناغم ، يُحدِّث نفس القافية

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	Synonym	Antonym
interesting شيق	exciting	uninteresting غير شيق
modern حديث	new	ancient قديم
right صحيح	correct	wrong خطأ
popular محبوب	favourite	unpopular غير محبوب
beginning بداية	start	end نهاية
useful مفيد	helpful	useless غير مفيد
orbit يدور حول	go around	stop يتوقف
difficult صعب	hard	easy سهل
national قومي، محلي	local	international دولي
carefully بعناية	well	carelessly بإهمال
receive يتسلم	get	send يرسل
get to يصل إلى	arrive	leave يغادر
amazing مذهش	interesting	bad سيئ
return يرجع، يعود	back	leave يغادر

Prefixes and Suffixes بادئات ولاحقات

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
un-	not نفى	important → unimportant popular → unpopular exciting → unexciting comfortable → uncomfortable successful → unsuccessful successfully → unsuccessfully clear → unclear interesting → uninteresting
dis-	opposite عكس المعنى	appear → disappear believe → disbelieve
im-	opposite عكس المعنى	possible → impossible
inter-	between (involving) بين، متضمناً	national → international

اليوم الأول

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

Suffix	Parts of speech	Examples
-ian	noun → adjective	Egypt → Egyptian
-tion	verb → noun	produce → production solve → solution
-ation	verb → noun	prepare → preparation
-er	noun → noun (job)	astronomy → astronomer
	verb → noun (job)	research → researcher receive → receiver
-less	noun → adjective	use → useless wire → wireless
-ful	noun → adjective	use → useful success → successful
-ing	verb } noun } → noun	engineer → engineering teach → teaching
-y	verb → noun	discover → discovery

👉 Abbreviations اختصارات

GPS → global positioning system

نظام تحديد المواقع العالمي

BCE → before common era

قبل الميلاد

Dr → doctor

طبيب

Mr → mister

سيد ، أستاذ

TV → television

تلفزيون



Important Definitions تعريفات هامة

Word	Definition
toiler كادح	someone who is working hard
grain حبوب	a seed or seeds from a plant such as wheat
fellow رفيق، صاحب	another word for 'man'
orbit يدور حول	move around a star or planet
astronaut رائد فضاء	a person who travels into space
braces تقويم الأسنان	something that makes your teeth straight
continent قارة	a large area of land such as Africa or Asia
GPS (global positioning system) النظام العالمي لتحديد المواقع	a system for finding a place using satellites
gravity الجاذبية الأرضية	the force that attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth
helmet خوذة	a special hard hat used to protect the head
lens عدسة	a piece of glass (in cameras or on glasses) that can make things look bigger or smaller
recycle يعيد تصنيع	use something again, such as an old bottle or plastic

اليوم الأول

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

Word	Definition
researcher باحث	a person who studies something carefully
satellite قمر صناعي	a machine that goes around the Earth to send or collect information
sensor مستشعر	something which can measure small amounts of light, heat or sound
signal إشارة	an instruction that is sent by sound, light, etc.
solar system النظام الشمسي	all the planets and their moons which go around the sun
space station محطة فضاء	a large spacecraft where people live and work to study space
telescope تليسكوب	a piece of equipment that you use to see things that are far away
wireless لا سلكي	able to use the internet without wires

الشاطر

Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر

- travel into space يسافر إلى الفضاء
- walk on the moon يمشى على سطح القمر
- solve the problem يحل المشكلة
- on their journeys في رحلاتهم
- graduate in engineering تخرج في الهندسة
- graduate from Aswan University يتخرج من جامعة أسوان
- the Earth orbited the sun كانت الأرض تدور حول الشمس
- made the lenses stronger جعل العدسات أقوى
- study the planets يدرس الكواكب
- send signals يرسل إشارات
- far from بعيد عن
- useful in places مفيد في أماكن
- useful for weather reports مفيد في تقارير الطقس
- landed on the moon هبط على القمر
- stay on the space station يمتكث في محطة الفضاء
- look closely at... ينظر عن قرب إلى ...
- to back there أن يعود إلى هناك
- take the rubbish off the spacecraft يُبعد القمامة عن مركبة الفضاء
- work for NASA يعمل لحساب وكالة ناسا الفضائية
- works as a researcher يعمل باحثًا

B Grammar

The past perfect tense زمن الماضي التام

→ Use الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن الماضي التام للتعبير عن حدث انتهى تمامًا قبل حدوث شيء آخر في الماضي (أو قبل وقت معين في الماضي).

- By the time we arrived, the bus **had left**.

→ Form التكوين

- يتكون زمن الماضي التام من :

1. Affirmative form: صيغة الإثبات

فاعل + had + past participle (p.p.)

- By 10 o'clock, the bus **had left**.

2. Negative form: صيغة النفي

فاعل + hadn't + past participle (p.p.)

- By the time you arrived, we **hadn't cooked** lunch.

3. Interrogative form: صيغة الاستفهام

A. Yes / No questions: أسئلة بمعنى «هل»

Had + فاعل + past participle (p.p.)?

- **Had** they **finished** their homework before they watched TV?

B. Wh- questions: أسئلة بأدوات الاستفهام

أداة استفهام + had + فاعل + past participle (p.p.)?

- What **had** you **bought** before you arrived?

♦ Key words: الكلمات الدالة عليه

- الكلمات التي تستخدم مع زمن الماضي التام عبارة عن روابط زمنية ، ولكل منها قاعدة خاصة ، ادرسها جيدًا فيما يلي :

after	بعد	as soon as	بمجرد أن
before	قبل	by the time	قبل الوقت
by .. o'clock	قبل الساعة ..	when	عندما
		until/till	حتى

♦ **After: بعد**

- **After** I **had bought** the ticket, I **went** to the cinema.

- After + ماضٍ تام → ماضٍ بسيط

OR: I **went** to the cinema **after** I **had bought** the ticket.

تذكر دائمًا استخدام الماضي التام بعد after

After 'after' → past perfect

♦ **As soon as: بمجرد أن**

- **As soon as** we **had had** lunch, we **washed** the dishes.

- As soon as + ماضٍ تام → ماضٍ بسيط

لاحظ أن المثال السابق به الفعل (had) مكرر، وهذا لأن had الأولى هي من تكوين الماضي التام، أما had الثانية فهي التصريف الثالث للفعل have بمعنى (يتناول).

♦ **Before: قبل**

- **Before** I **went** to the cinema, I **had bought** a ticket.

- Before + ماضٍ بسيط → ماضٍ تام

OR: I **had bought** a ticket **before** I **went** to the cinema.

تذكر دائمًا استخدام الماضي التام قبل (before) أو في الجزء الآخر من الجملة :

Before 'before' → past perfect

♦ **By the time: قبل الوقت**

- **By the time** I **watched** TV, I **had done** my homework.

- By the time + ماضٍ بسيط → ماضٍ تام

OR: I **had done** my homework **by the time** I **watched** TV.

♦ **By ... o'clock ... قبل الساعة ...**

- **By five o'clock**, we **had eaten** lunch.

- By ... o'clock → ماضٍ تام

OR: We **had eaten** lunch **by five o'clock**.

♦ **until / till:** حتى (إلى أن)

- He **didn't leave until** (= **till**) he **had taken** the money.
- ماضٍ تام → until (= till) + ماضٍ بسيط منفى

تذكر دائمًا استخدام ماضٍ بسيط منفى قبل (until / till) وغالبًا ما يكون كما يلي :

didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل / wasn't (+ p.p.) / couldn't + inf. مصدر الفعل / weren't

- They **weren't** ready **until** I **had phoned** them twice.
- The flat **wasn't** painted **till** we **had chosen** the colours.
- She **couldn't swim until** she **had taken** private lessons.

♦ **When:** عندما

- **When I arrived**, the bus **had left**.
- When + ماضٍ بسيط → ماضٍ تام

لاحظ أن (When) لها أكثر من استخدام ، فيمكن أن تساوى فى المعنى (After) أو (Before) ، ادرس ما يلى جيدًا :

- **When we (had) arrived** at the cinema, the film **started**.
[المعنى هنا أننا وصلنا إلى السينما أولاً (قبل بداية الفيلم) ، ولاحظ أنه إذا جاء الحدث الأول بعد (when) يمكن الاستغناء عن (had)] .
- **When we arrived** at the cinema, the film **had started**.
[أما هنا فالمعنى أن الفيلم بدأ أولاً] .

♦ **Notes:**

١ - عندما يفهم ترتيب الأحداث من سياق الكلام يكون الحدث الأول دائمًا فى زمن الماضى التام ، والحدث الثانى فى زمن الماضى البسيط (حتى لو لم يكن هناك رابط زمنى) مثل :

- The house was quiet **because** everybody **had gone** to bed.
(نلاحظ أن (because) يأتى بعدها السبب ، وقبلها النتيجة ، ومن المفهوم تلقائيًا أن السبب يحدث أولاً) .

٢ - إذا لم يكن هناك فاعل بعد (After) يأتى بعدها فعل الجملة مضافًا إليه (-ing) ويكون الفعل الآخر فى زمن الماضى البسيط :

- **After buying** the ticket, I **went** to the cinema.

٣ - إذا لم يكن هناك فاعل بعد (Before) يأتى بعدها فعل مضاف له (-ing) ويكون الفعل الآخر فى زمن الماضى التام :

- **Before going** to the cinema, I **had bought** a ticket.

٤ - إذا جاء الرابط الزمنى فى بداية الكلام توضع فاصلة (,) بين الجملتين ، أما إذا جاء الرابط بين الجملتين فلا نضع فاصلة .

زمن المضارع التام The present perfect tense

→ Use الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وله صلة بالوقت الحاضر (إما أنه انتهى وله تأثير الآن ، أو ما زال يحدث) .

Examples: أمثلة

- I **have visited** Port Said. لقد زرت بورسعيد .
(هذا الحدث انتهى في الماضي ولكن ما زال له تأثير على الوقت الحاضر ، وهو أنني أذكر بورسعيد وأصبح عندي فكرة عنها) .
- I **haven't seen** you for a long time. لم أرك منذ فترة طويلة .
(هذا الحدث له صلة بالوقت الحاضر لأنه انتهى منذ وقت قصير مضى وذلك برؤية صديقه) .
- Samy **has been** in prep school for two years. سامي له عامان في المدرسة الإعدادية .
(هذا الحدث صلتها بالوقت الحاضر هو أنه ما زال مستمرًا ؛ لأن « سامي » ما زال يدرس بالمدرسة الإعدادية) .

→ Form: التكوين

- يتكون زمن المضارع التام من :

have } past participle (P.P.)
has } (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

Affirmative الإثبات	I / We / You / They	have (= 've)	finished...	
	He / She / It	has (= 's)	lost... been...	
Interrogative الاستفهام	Have	I / we / you / they	finished...	?
	Has	he / she / it	lost... been...	
Negative النفي	I / We / You / They	have not (= haven't)	finished...	
	He / She / It	has not (= hasn't)	lost... been...	

اليوم الأول

→ Key words: الكلمات الدالة عليه

ever	في وقت ما	never	أبداً
just	حالا (من وقت قصير مضى)	already	سابقاً
recently	مؤخراً (في الفترة القليلة الماضية)	yet	حتى الآن (بعد)
since	منذ	for	لمدة

• لاحظ جيداً استخدام كل كلمة منها فيما يلي :

ever & never

• ever

• تستخدم في الأسئلة :

• **Have you ever visited Luxor?**

• never

• تستخدم للنفي (فلا نستخدم معها صيغة نفي أخرى) وتصلح كإجابة بالنفي على سؤال به (ever) :

• Ali **has never been** to the zoo.

• لاحظ أن (ever) و (never) توضعان بين (have) أو (has) والتصريف الثالث للفعل .

already & just

• already

• تستخدم للدلالة على أن الحدث تم من قبل بالفعل (دون تحديد وقت حدوثه) .

• I **have already done** my homework.

• just

• تستخدم للدلالة على أن الحدث انتهى من وقت قصير جداً مضى (دون تحديد وقت حدوثه) :

• Hello! **Have you just arrived?**

• لاحظ أن (already) و (just) توضعان بين (have) أو (has) والتصريف الثالث للفعل .

recently & yet

• recently (= in the last few days)

• تستخدم في السؤال والإثبات والنفي ، وتوضع في نهاية الجملة :

• **Have you seen** Magdy **recently?**

• yet

• تستخدم في السؤال والنفي ، وتوضع في نهاية الجملة :

• **Has** Hend **eaten** her lunch **yet?**

• I **haven't finished** my homework **yet.**

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

since & for

→ since

• يأتي بعدها نقطة بداية الحدث :

- She **has been** in the shops **since** 2 o'clock.

→ for

• يأتي بعدها المدة التي استغرقها الحدث (منذ بدأ حتى الآن) :

- She **has been** in the shops **for** 2 hours.

→ just

• ويأتي بعد **since** و **for** أشياء ، مثل :

نقطة بداية الحدث + since	المدة التي استغرقها الحدث + for
<p>since</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2 o'clock • Monday • 12th May • April • yesterday • I was young → (ماضٍ بسيط + since) • 1999 • lunchtime • last week • last night 	<p>for</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2 hours • 3 days • 2 weeks • 4 months • a day • 14 years • a long time • a week • a night

Notes:

- لا نذكر أبداً وقت حدوث الفعل مع زمن المضارع التام ، ولا نسأل عنه كذلك .
- لذلك فأداتا الاستفهام (When) و (What time) لا تستخدمان أبداً في المضارع التام ولا في الإجابة عنهما ، ويمكن استخدام الماضى البسيط لهذا الغرض :

Examples:

- **Have you ever been to Luxor?**
- Yes, I **have**.
- **When did you go there?**
- I **went** there last winter.
- ولكن مع المضارع التام نستخدم أداة الاستفهام (كم المدة How long) للسؤال عن المدة التي استغرقها الحدث من الماضى حتى الآن :
- **How long have you waited for the bus?**
- وفى الإجابة نستخدم **since** أو **for** (ولا نذكر وقت حدوث الفعل) :
- I've waited for the bus **for half an hour**.
- I've waited for the bus **since eleven o'clock**.

The present perfect continuous tense

زمن المضارع التام المستمر

→ Use الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن :
 - أشياء بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة :
 - They **have been studying** English for 5 years.
 - أشياء بدأت في الماضي وانتهت حاليًا (من وقت قصير مضى) وما زال أثرها ملحوظًا :
 - A: "Why is that road so muddy?"
 - B: "It **has been raining**."
 - أشياء تحدث الآن بصفة مؤقتة :
 - Ahmed **has been going** to car companies to look at new cars.
 - (والفرق بين زمن المضارع التام المستمر وزمن المضارع التام ، هو أن المضارع التام المستمر يركز على الفترة التي يستغرقها الفعل في الحدث ، وليس ما تم إنجازه ، بخلاف المضارع التام) :

→ Form: التكوين

have } + been + مصدر الفعل + -ing
has }

→ Key words: الكلمات الدالة عليه

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام المستمر مع كلمات مثل :
 all day/morning etc. طوال اليوم recently حديثًا ، مؤخرًا
 for لمدة since منذ
 How long? كم المدة ؟

More examples:

- How long **has it been raining**?
- It **has been raining** for two days.
- Adel is still watching television. He **'s been watching** television all day.
- Where have you been? I **'ve been looking** for you for half an hour.
- Ahmed **hasn't been feeling** well recently.

The present perfect continuous & The present perfect simple

• قارن بين زمنى المضارع التام والمضارع التام المستمر ، فيما يلى :

١ - المضارع التام يركز على ما تم إنجازه ، أما المضارع التام المستمر فالتركيز فيه على الوقت المستغرق فى الحدث .

- Mai **has been drawing** a nice picture. She's still drawing.

(مضارع تام مستمر)

التركيز هنا على أن شيئاً بدأ وما زال متسماً (رسم الصورة) .

- Mai **has drawn** a nice picture. Here it is.

التركيز هنا على ما تم إنجازه (الصورة المرسومة) .

٢ - أحياناً يكون هناك فرق بسيط أو لا يكون هناك فرق بين الزمنين :

- How long **have** you **been working** here?
- How long **have** you **worked** here?

٣ - هناك بعض الأفعال يدل معناها على أنها تستغرق وقتاً طويلاً فى الحدث ؛ لذلك يفضل استخدامها فى المضارع التام المستمر :

(work / wait / live / sleep / etc.)

- We've **been living** in Cairo for 15 years.

٤ - هناك بعض الأفعال يدل معناها على أنها لا تستغرق وقتاً طويلاً فى الحدث ؛ لذلك يجب استخدامها فى المضارع التام :

(start / finish / buy / fall / etc.)

- Come quickly, Ali! The match **has started**.

٥ - هناك أفعال لا تستخدم أبداً فى المضارع التام المستمر (ولا فى أى زمن مستمر آخر) وهى أفعال الإدراك والمشاعر ، مثل :

like / يحب / know / يعرف / hate / يكره / forget / ينسى / believe / يعتقد / understand / يفهم / prefer / يفضل / mean / يعنى

- We **have known** each other for two years now.

C Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 Asking and Answering Questions in a Quiz

طرح الأسئلة والإجابة عنها في مسابقة معلومات

- When did people first discover the planets in our solar system?
- About 400 years ago.
- When did people discover the Earth was round?
- In the 15th century.
- Who invented the telescope?
- Hans Lippershey.
- How many people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century?
- 12

2 Saying when events happened

الحديث عن وقت حدوث الأشياء

- The world's first space station went into space in 1990.
- The first telescope was sent into space in 1990.
- Neil Armstrong was the first astronaut to walk on the moon.
That was in 1969.

3 Talking about space and satellite technology

الحديث عن الفضاء وتكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية

- GPS uses a system of satellites to send messages.
- Weather reports allow us to study the weather.
- TV and the internet help us to watch our favourite shows and sports matches.
- Satellite phones are useful in places far from cities because they can work anywhere in the world.

General Exercises on [Unit 10]

اليوم الأول

1 A) Finish the following dialogue.

Ahmed and his sister Noha are talking about Dr Farouk El-Baz.

Noha : What are you doing, Ahmed?

Ahmed : I'm reading (1).....

Noha : What does the article say about him?

Ahmed : It says he is a famous Egyptian space scientist.

Noha : (2)..... ?

Ahmed : He teaches at a university in the USA.

Noha : (3)..... ?

Ahmed : Of course, he did a lot of research, which helped astronauts land on the moon.

Noha : I heard he studied the desert to help Egypt find

(4).....

Ahmed : (5).....

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

B) Finish the following dialogue.

Ramy is telling Mustafa about the school trip to the planetarium.

Ramy : Have you heard about the school trip?

Mustafa : No, I haven't. (1)..... ?

Ramy : We are going (2).....

Mustafa : Great! (3).....

Ramy : You can tell Mr Emad to include your name.

Mustafa : (4)..... ?

Ramy : We can see the planets in the solar system.

Mustafa : How can we see the planets closely?

Ramy : (5).....

Mustafa : Yes, that's right! It helps us see things that are far away.

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

2 A) Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

lenses - studying - system - studied - telescope - orbit

The stars and the planets have always been important to us. Before the beginning of the 17th century, astronomers had only (1)..... space with their own eyes. Then, in 1608, the (2)..... was invented. The Italian astronomer Galileo improved the design. He made the (3)..... stronger. That helped him study the planets in our solar (4)..... .

B) Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

photos - used - using - storms - history - weather

We can't live without satellite technology. Since the late 20th century, we have (1)..... satellite technology for many of the things we do every day. For example, satellites allow us to study the (2)..... all around the world. They send (3)..... of the Earth from space. This helps us to know about clouds and (4)..... .

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions.

Last year, I went to the planetarium in Alexandria with my cousin, Ashraf. I was really excited because I had never been to a planetarium before. Ashraf lives in Alexandria, so he has visited the planetarium a few times with his family. We saw a really interesting film about Ancient Egypt. We learned about how the Ancient Egyptians had studied the stars to find out when the Nile flooded. They had even used the stars to help them build the Pyramids.

After the film, we went to an exhibition about Mars. Did you know a space robot had explored Mars before the end of the 20th century? It landed on Mars in 1997.

We had an amazing time. We were there all morning, but when we left, we hadn't seen everything! I'd like to back there again one day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- After the film we went to
 a) the planetarium b) Mars
 c) an exhibition d) Alexandria
- The underlined word 'It' refers to
 a) 20th century b) the film
 c) Mars d) a space robot
- When we left, we had seen
 a) everything b) some things
 c) nothing d) all things

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the best title of the text?
- Why did the Ancient Egyptians study the stars?
- What was the exhibition about?

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- is a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away.
 a) A satellite b) Gravity
 c) A telescope d) An astronaut
- The synonym of the word 'useful' is '.....'.
 a) useless b) helpful c) helpless d) used
- The antonym of the word '.....' is 'hard'.
 a) easy b) difficult c) wrong d) ancient
- We can add the prefix '.....' to 'popular' to give the opposite.
 a) dis- b) in- c) un- d) im-

اليوم الأول

5. We add the suffix '.....' to 'success' to form the adjective.

- a) -ly b) -ion c) -tion d) -ful

6. The space station goes around the Earth. 'Go around' here means

- a) fall b) orbit c) flood d) leave

اليوم الثاني

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. is someone who studies the stars and planets.

- a) An engineer b) An astronomer
c) A researcher d) A scientist

2. The synonym of 'ancient' is '.....'.

- a) modern b) new c) local d) very old

3. The antonym of the word 'carefully' is '.....'.

- a) well b) careless c) carelessly d) successful

4. We can add the prefix '.....' to the word 'possible' to change it to the opposite.

- a) un- b) im- c) dis- d) inter-

5. To change the word 'research' from a verb to a noun, we add the suffix '.....'.

- a) -less b) -ful c) -tion d) -er

6. The words 'know' and 'no' make the same sound. This means they

- a) rhyme b) produce c) sound d) meet

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

5 A) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. I thanked my friend because he had (helping) me.

2. Before I (send) the report, I had revised it.

3. Heba has been (done) the housework for two hours.



Day 4 - Unit 10

اليوم الأول

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

1 Finish the following dialogue.

- A)** 1. an article about Dr Farouk El-Baz.
2. Where does he work?
3. Did he do any research?
4. water that is under the sand.
5. Yes, of course.
- B)** 1. Where are you going?
2. to the planetarium.
3. I want to come with you.
4. What can we see there?
5. By using the telescope.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

- A)** 1. studied 2. telescope
3. lenses 4. system
- B)** 1. used 2. weather
3. photos 4. storms

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) an exhibition
2. d) a space robot
3. b) some things

B) Answer the following questions:

1. 'A visit to the planetarium'.
2. To find out when the Nile flooded.
3. It was about Mars.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A)** 1. c) A telescope
2. b) helpful 3. a) easy
4. c) un- 5. d) -ful
6. b) orbit
- B)** 1. b) An astronomer
2. d) very old
3. c) carelessly 4. b) im-
5. d) -er
6. a) rhyme

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- A)** 1. helped 2. sent
3. doing 4. had
5. since
- B)** 1. tried 2. had finished
3. for 4. had
5. did

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following: 'A review about your trip to the planetarium'

Last week, I went to the planetarium in Alexandria. I went with my friends. I was really excited because I hadn't been to a planetarium before. We saw a really interesting film about Ancient Egypt. We know that the Ancient Egyptians had studied the stars to find out when the Nile flooded. They used the stars to help them build the Pyramids. At the planetarium, we enjoyed watching the planets and stars. We used a telescope to look more closely at the stars. We knew that there are eight planets in our solar system. We also knew that the person who studies the stars and planets is called an astronomer. We enjoyed our time there.



UNIT 11: Media now and in the past

A Vocabulary

media	وسائل الإعلام
camera operator	مشغل الكاميرا
journalist	صحفي
newsreader	قارئ النشرة
photographer	مُصوِّر
radio presenter	مذيع بالراديو
web designer	مصمم مواقع إلكترونية
police officer	ضابط شرطة
editor	محرر ، رئيس تحرير
rather than	بدلاً من
design(-ed)	يصمم
article	مقال
control(-led)	يتحكم
webpage	صفحة على الإنترنت
city centre	وسط المدينة
pipe	أنبوب ، ماسورة
burst	ينفجر
witness	شاهد
stuck	عالق في زحام
cross (adj.)	غاضب
replace(-d)	يستبدل
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
warning	تحذير
politely	بأدب
football tournament	دوري كرة القدم
climate change	تغير مناخى
explain(-ed)	يشرح

governor	محافظ
tourism	السياحة
recycling	إعادة تصنيع الأشياء
radio broadcasting	بث إذاعي
female voice	صوت أنثوى
linguist	عالم لغوى
encourage(-d)	يشجع
literature	أدب اللغة
graduate(-d)	يتخرج
presenter	مقدم برامج
retire(-d)	يتقاعد ، يُحال للمعاش
voice	صوت آدمى
career	مهنة
award	جائزة رسمية
well-known	مشهور
cultural	ثقافى
guardian	حارس ، راعٍ
traditional	تقليدى
probably	من المحتمل
apparently	بوضوح ، بشكل واضح
sports star	نجم رياضى
according to	طبقاً لـ ...
interview(-ed)	مقابلة صحفية
normal	طبيعى ، عادى
report	تقرير
forward(-ed)	يرسل
punish(-ed)	يعاقب

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	Synonym	Antonym
love	يحب	hate يكره
cross	غاضب	happy سعيد
quickly	بسرعة	slowly ببطء
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	fortunately لحسن الحظ
arrive	يصل	leave يغادر
finish	يُنتهى ، ينتهى	start يبدأ
famous	مشهور	unknown غير معروف
true	حقيقي	untrue غير حقيقي
helpful	متعاون ، معين	unhelpful غير معين
nearby	مجاور ، قريب	far بعيد
local	محلي	international دولي
difficult	صعب	easy سهل
possible	ممکن ، جائز	impossible مستحيل
forward	يرسل	receive يتسلم
dangerous	خطير	unsafe آمن

Prefixes and Suffixes بادئات ولاحقات

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
im-	not ... نفى opposite عكس المعنى	polite → impolite possible → impossible
re-	do again يقوم بالفعل مرة أخرى	build → rebuild place → replace
un-	not ... نفى opposite عكس المعنى	kind → unkind able → unable true → untrue fortunately → unfortunately

اليوم الأول

Suffix	Parts of speech	Examples
-or	verb → noun	edit → editor operate → operator govern → governor
-er	verb → noun	design → designer present → presenter photograph → photographer
-ly	adjective → adverb	polite → politely real → really unfortunate → unfortunately
-al	noun → adjective	education → educational tradition → traditional
-ful	verb → adjective	help → helpful

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

Important Definitions تعريفات هامة

Word	Definition
broadcasting البث الإذاعي	the business of making TV or radio programmes
burst ينفجر	break open suddenly
camera operator مشغل الكاميرا	a person who films things for television
cross (adj) غاضب	angry or annoyed
editor ١- رئيس التحرير ٢- محرر (كاتب)	1. a person who decides what should be in a newspaper or magazine 2. a person whose job is to check the information and language in newspaper or magazine articles

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

اليوم الأول

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

Word	Definition
festival احتفال ، مهرجان	a day or time for people to celebrate something
governor محافظ	the person who rules a city or area
interview لقاء ، حوار	a meeting at which someone /a famous person is asked questions about something
journalist صحفي	a person who writes news or articles for a newspaper or a website
linguist عالم فى اللغة	someone who studies and teaches languages
media وسائل الإعلام	newspapers, magazines, radio, television and the internet
newsreader قارئ النشرة	someone whose job is to read the news on TV or the radio
photographer مصور	a person whose job is to take photographs
radio presenter مقدم إذاعي	a person whose job is to introduce programmes on the radio
retire يتقاعد	stop working because a person is old
stuck عالق	not able to move (especially in a traffic jam)
voice صوت آدمى	the sound that you make when you speak
warning تحذير	something that tells you about bad or dangerous things/situations
web designer مصمم مواقع إلكترونية	a person who designs websites
witness شاهد	a person who tells about an accident or a crime he/she has seen

Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر

- on TV فى التلفزيون
- in the future فى المستقبل
- design a website يصمم موقعًا على الإنترنت
- in the media فى وسائل الإعلام
- on a radio programme فى برنامج إذاعي
- write news articles يكتب مقالات إخبارية
- all types of... كل أنواع...
- interested in... مهتم بـ...
- want to be a photographer يريد أن يكون مصوّرًا
- on the road to... فى الطريق إلى...
- welcome to... مرحبًا بكم فى...
- in the middle of... فى منتصف...
- We were stuck كنا عالقين بالطريق
- for free مجانًا
- on fire مشتعلة فيه النار
- the whole Arab world العالم العربى بأكمله
- head of... رئيس...
- do some interviews يُجرى بعض المقابلات
- on the news فى الأخبار
- for a while لبرهة من الوقت
- as soon as possible بأسرع ما يمكن
- take the car back يُعيد السيارة
- all the way طوال الطريق
- by mistake عن طريق الخطأ

اليوم الأول

• at a very early age فى سن مبكرة جدًا

• Later on... وفيما بعد

• graduate from... يتخرج من...

• For this reason لهذا السبب

• win a prize for... يفوز بجائزة عن...

• work for... يعمل لحساب

• news website موقع إخباري

• look forward to + $\frac{v+ing}{n.}$ يتطلع إلى

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

B Grammar

Reported speech الكلام غير المباشر Statements الجمل الخبرية

• لتحويل الجملة الخبرية من المباشر إلى غير المباشر ، تتبع الآتى :

→ Example:

- 'I'm coming home at six,' said Sameh.

١ - نبدأ بالشخص الذى قال الكلام :

Sameh

٢ - إذا كان هناك مخاطب بالجملة (شخص موجه له الكلام) تُحوّل (said) إلى (told) ، أما إذا لم يكن هناك مخاطب فتبقى (said) كما هى :

Sameh said

٣ - نحذف الأقواس والفاصلة :

٤ - نربط بـ (that) (أو يمكن الاستغناء عنها) :

Sameh said that

٥ - نحول الضمائر حسب المعنى (فالمتحدث يصبح غائباً مثلاً ، وهكذا) :

Sameh said that he

٦ - إذا كان الفعل الأول (فعل القول (said)) ماضياً ، نحول كل صيغ المضارع بالجملة إلى صيغ الماضى الخاصة بها ، مثل :

am/is → was

do/does → did

can → could

are → were

have/has → had

will → would

Sameh said that he was coming home at six.

(لاحظ أن : الفعل المضاف إليه (-ing) لا يتغير شكله ، ولكن نغير الفعل الذى قبله .
أما إذا كانت الجملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط فإننا نحوله إلى زمن الماضى التام ، مثل :

- 'We didn't visit the museum,' said Heba.

→ Heba said that they hadn't visited the museum.

أما الأفعال الناقصة والأداة (to) فيكون الفعل بعدها دائماً فى صيغة المصدر (سواء فى المباشر أو فى غير المباشر) :

- 'I want to arrive on time, so I'll take a taxi,' Magdy said.

→ Magdy said that he wanted to arrive on time, so he would take a taxi.

V - أى إشارة للقريب تتحول فى غير المباشر إلى إشارة للبعيد ، كما فى الجدول التالى :

Direct مباشر	Reported غير مباشر
this هذا	→ that ذاك
these هؤلاء	→ those أولئك
here هنا	→ there هناك
now الآن	→ then حينئذ
today اليوم	→ that day فى ذلك اليوم
tonight هذه الليلة	→ that night فى تلك الليلة
tomorrow غداً	→ the following day / the next day اليوم التالى
next ... القادم ...	→ the following ... التالى ...
yesterday أمس	→ the day before / the previous day اليوم السابق
last ... الماضى ...	→ the ... before ال ... السابق
... ago منذ ... مضت	→ ... before منذ ... قبله
come / came يأتى / أتى	→ go / went يذهب / ذهب

→ More examples:

- 'We're leaving now,' said Ahmed.
→ Ahmed said **that they were** leaving **then**.
- Adel said to Hany, "I haven't finished my homework."
→ Adel **told** Hany **that he hadn't** finished **his** homework.
- "I'm going to mend my bike," he said.
→ He said **that he was** going to mend **his** bike.
- "My uncle found a new job last week," Samy said.
→ Samy said **that his** uncle **had found** a new job **the week before**.

C Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 Asking about opinion السؤال عن الرأي

• للسؤال عن الرأي نقول :

- What do you think about/of ... ?
 - What's your opinion about ... ?
- ما رأيك فى ... ؟
- What do you think about studying online?

ما رأيك فى الدراسة عبر الإنترنت ؟

2 Expressing opinion التعبير عن الرأي

• وللتعبير عن الرأي نقول :

- I think
 - I don't think
- أعتقد أن
- لا أعتقد أن
- I think it's great. أعتقد أنه شيء عظيم .
- I don't think it's a good idea. لا أعتقد أنها فكرة جيدة .

• ويمكن أن نذكر تجربتنا مباشرة دون مقدمات ، مثل :

- I don't like studying online because I can't discuss things with my friends.

3 Discourse markers & Managing a topic

تعبيرات ربط الأفكار وإدارة الحديث عن موضوع

• لربط الأفكار أو توجيه الحوار نحو موضوع معين نستخدم تعبيرات مثل :

- Apparently
 - Have you heard that
 - Did you know that
 - According to (the newspaper).....
 - I heard that
- من الواضح أن ، بوضوح
- هل سمعت أن
- هل تعلم أن
- وفقًا لـ ، طبقًا لـ ... (الجريدة) ...
- سمعت أن

4 Responding to good/bad news

الرد عند سماع الأخبار الجيدة أو السيئة

• تذكر التعبيرات التالية والتي تستخدم في الرد عند سماع أخبار جيدة أو سيئة :

- Really? حقاً ؟
- I didn't know that. لم أكن أعلم ذلك .
- That's good news. إنها أخبار جيدة .
- Wow! رائع !
- Good idea. فكرة جيدة .
- That's bad news. إنها أخبار سيئة .

→ Examples:

- A: "My favourite sports team won yesterday!"
B: "That's good news."
- A: "There is a lot of pollution on this beach."
B: "That's bad news."
- A: "Injy speaks good English and she is only five!"
B: "Wow!"

الشاطر

General Exercises on [Unit 11]

اليوم الأول

1 A) Finish the following dialogue.

Omar and Fares are talking about the news.

Omar : Have you heard that a famous sports star is going to visit our village?

Fares : Really? (1)..... ?

Omar : According to the news website, he's a basketball star.

Fares : That's (2)..... !

Omar : Did you know (3)..... ?

Fares : No, I didn't know that. And when will he build that sports centre?

Omar : Maybe next month. The good thing is that he will train the students himself.

Fares : (4).....

Omar : (5).....

Fares : Me, too. I want to play basketball.

اليوم الثاني

اليوم الثالث

اليوم الرابع

اليوم الخامس

اليوم السادس

اليوم السابع

B) Finish the following dialogue.

The teacher asks Hany about his father, who presents a programme called 'Famous Figures'.

Teacher : What's your father's job?

Hany : (1).....

Teacher : (2)..... ?

Hany : He interviews famous people on a radio programme.

Teacher : (3)..... ?

Hany : Yes, his programme is very famous.

Teacher : What's the name of the programme?

Hany : (4).....

Teacher : Can I find it on the internet?

Hany : (5).....

2 A) Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

stuck - sticking - governor - presenter - hit - burst

"Welcome to the lunchtime news. This is Manal Ezzat, the radio (1)..... . This morning at around 10 am, a water pipe (2)..... outside the Grand Supermarket. The road is closed while workers try to fix the pipe. Some of the local shops are flooded and some cars are (3)..... in the road. The (4)..... says that the pipe will be fixed as soon as possible.

B) Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

website - help - helped - journalists - presenters - online

I'm an editor. I work for an English language news (1)..... . I started at a newspaper, but I think more people read news (2)..... now. So, I prefer this job. Lots of different (3)..... send me their articles, and I have to decide which ones are the most important. One of those journalists told me that I (4)..... him change his writing style.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions.

Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet. He was born in Damietta in 1936. He went to a nearby elementary school. He went to the local library at a very early age, and was able to read many books in the Arabic language. Later on, Shousha went to Cairo University and graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum in 1956.

Shousha worked as a radio presenter in 1958 and later on as a TV presenter, too. He always liked poetry and Arabic literature. He presented many programmes like 'Our Beautiful Language' on the radio, and 'Cultural Evening'.

In his programmes, Shousha always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and its rich literature. For this reason, he was called 'the guardian of the Arabic language'. He won the Nile Prize for Literature in 2016.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We can understand that this text is
a) a short story b) a biography
c) science fiction d) a news article
- Shousha first read Arabic books at the
a) elementary school b) radio
c) Faculty of Dar al-Ulum d) local library
- The underlined word 'well-known' can be replaced by
a) unknown b) unpopular c) famous d) interesting

B. Answer the following questions:

- What did Shousha talk about in his programme?
- Why was he called 'the guardian of the Arabic language'?
- How old was Farouk Shousha when he won the Nile Prize for Literature?

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A/An is a person whose job is to choose what should be in a newspaper.
a) journalist b) camera operator
c) editor d) newsreader
- My father was cross with me when I arrived late. The word 'cross' here is a synonym of '.....'.
a) happy b) unhappy c) pleased d) delighted
- He received an email from his friend. The word 'receive' is an antonym of '.....'.
a) forward b) get c) take d) welcome
- We can get the noun of the verb 'edit' by adding the suffix '.....'.
a) -al b) -ion c) -er d) -or

5. The prefix '.....' changes the word 'polite' to the opposite.

a) -un

b) -im

c) -dis

d) -il

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The person who rules a city or an area is called

a) an editor

b) a linguist

c) a governor

d) a presenter

2. Unluckily, I forgot the book in the taxi. The word 'unluckily' here means

a) luckily

b) lucky

c) fortunately

d) unfortunately

3. The injured man was taken to the nearby hospital. The word 'nearby' is the antonym of

a) near

b) far

c) close

d) cheap

4. The prefix '.....' gives the opposite of the word 'safe'.

a) -im

b) -ir

c) -un

d) -il

5. The suffix '.....' changes the verb 'help' into adjective.

a) -er

b) -or

c) -ive

d) -ful

5 A) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Malak said that she (wants) to go to the museum.

2. She (said) me that she was tired.

3. Emad said that his father was driving home (now).

4. Dina said that she (is) travelling with her family.

5. He explained that he couldn't work for (this) website.

Day 5 - Unit 11

1 Finish the following dialogue.

- A)** 1. What sport does he play?
 2. amazing
 3. that he will build a sports centre?
 4. That's good news.
 5. I'm interested in basketball.
- B)** 1. He is a radio presenter.
 2. What does he do?
 3. Is his programme well-known?
 4. 'Famous Figures'
 5. Sure, you can.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list.

- A)** 1. presenter 2. burst
 3. stuck 4. governor
- B)** 1. website 2. online
 3. journalists 4. helped

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) a biography
 2. a) elementary school
 3. c) famous

B) Answer the following questions:

1. He talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and its rich literature.
 2. Because he liked poetry and Arabic literature. He always talked about the beauty of Arabic language and its rich literature in his programmes.
 3. He was eighty years old.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A)** 1. c) editor
 2. b) unhappy 3. a) forward
 4. d) -or 5. b) -im
- B)** 1. c) a governor
 2. d) unfortunately
 3. b) far 4. c) -un
 5. d) -ful

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- A)** 1. wanted 2. told
 3. then 4. was
 5. that
- B)** 1. following 2. had
 3. that day 4. those
 5. would

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

'A famous Egyptian person'

Safia El-Mohandes was called the mother of all broadcasters. She was born in 1922 in Cairo. Her father was a famous linguist. He encouraged Safia to read Arabic books and novels. Safia also studied English literature at the university and graduated from the faculty of Arts in 1945. In 1947, Safia joined the Egyptian radio, and she was the first female radio presenter.

She presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme, 'Housewives', presented news, educational advice and drama for the whole Egyptian family. She was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters. She retired in 1982.